SOME PROBLEMS OF DIALECT LEXICOGRAPHY

with particular reference to
the preparation of a draft of an
illustrative, experientially categorised
Dictionary of South African English

Part I

A dissertation submitted to
Rhodes University
by
Jean Branford
December 1975
Acknowledgements

I wish to express my warmest thanks to those who have helped and supported me through this work.

My deepest debt is to my promoter and supervisor of studies Professor Johan Smuts to whose meticulous scholarship and never-failing, kindly guidance I owe more than can be adequately expressed here.

I want also to record my gratitude to the Human Sciences Research Council who financed the major part of the work;

To the Director and Board of the Institute for the Study of English in Africa for adopting it in its infancy as an Institute project, thereby enabling me to work on it full-time;

To Rhodes University for accepting me as a student at an advanced age, and to the Department of Afrikaans-Nederlands for receiving this English-medium cuckoo in the nest with such kindness;

To my husband and children, and to all those whose names appear, and many whose do not, in the acknowledgements preceding Part II.
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part I</th>
<th>Chapter I</th>
<th>Introductory</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>General Outline</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>Decisions</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>Selection of Items</td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>Dialect Lexicography</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>South African English</td>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>Attitudes to South African English Vocabulary</td>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>Scope of the South African English Vocabulary</td>
<td></td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>The Stranger and the South African English Vocabulary</td>
<td></td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>Categorisation</td>
<td></td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.10</td>
<td>Other Features of the Text</td>
<td></td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.11</td>
<td>South Africanisms</td>
<td></td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter II</th>
<th>The Problems of Phonetic Representation of South African English for a Dialect Dictionary.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>Introductory Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>The Script</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>The Non-English Sounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3.1</td>
<td>The Consonants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3.2</td>
<td>The Vowels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3.3</td>
<td>Diphthongs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3.4</td>
<td>Vowels and Diphthongs modified by -tjie and -djie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>Pronunciation Key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>Pronunciation Spellings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>References</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter III</th>
<th>The Treatment of Dialect Grammar for Purposes of Lexicography</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>Treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>Summary of Grammatical Corpus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.1</td>
<td>Short Cuts and Omissions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.2</td>
<td>Redundancies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.3</td>
<td>Translated Structures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>The Syntactic Categories and 'Translations'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.1</td>
<td>Introductory Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.2</td>
<td>Translations or Transliterations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.3</td>
<td>Verbs and Verbal Phrases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.4</td>
<td>Adjectives, Noun Modifiers and Group Modifiers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.5</td>
<td>Other</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter IV</th>
<th>The Treatment of Dialect Vocabulary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>Introduction; the taxonomic approach; problems of inclusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>The Detailed Categorisation of the Vocabulary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Introductory Note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'Ready Reference Table' of Categories</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Categories 1 - 34, Notes and Word Lists</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Part II

4.3 Labelling for a Dialect Dictionary 188
4.3.1 Abbreviations and labelling 195
I Linguistic Signals 195
II Usage Signals 196
III Other English Dialects and Other Languages 199
Alphabetical List of Abbreviations and Other Labels 201

4.4 The Treatment of Place Name Formatives for a Dialect Dictionary 205

4.5 Cross-dialect References in the Text 215

References:

Bibliography; Introductory Note 225
Detailed Bibliography:
I Dictionaries 229
II Other Reference Works 232
Addenda to II 238
III Newspapers and Magazines 240
IV Word Sources 241
V Other 257

Part II

A draft of a dictionary of South African English showing forms, features, adaptations and borrowings characteristic of English in South Africa: with illustrative quotations and a categorised survey of the vocabulary. 1

Acknowledgements
Introduction 1 - x
[Categorised Survey of the Vocabulary] 1 xi - xv
Pronunciation Key 2 xvi - xix
Alphabetical List of Abbreviations and Other Labels 3 xx - xxv
Abbreviations and Labelling 3 1 - 580
The Lexicon A - Z 581 - 590
Addenda 4
[Bibliography] 4

1. The Categorised Survey is not repeated here but is given in Part I as Chapter IV 4.2 pp. 90-187
2. This also appears in Chapter II, 2.4 p41
3. These appear in Chapter IV 4.3.1 pp.195-204
4. This is not repeated in Part II, but appears at the end of Part I p229
It is to be regretted that in Volumes II and III it has been necessary to insert a large number of handwritten addenda. This has been primarily occasioned by the fact that the full, amended typescript prepared for the publisher only came to hand after the two volumes of Part II were already bound. It has seemed preferable, nevertheless, not to sacrifice this material, once it again became available, to the outward appearance of the work.

Certain other handwritten addenda, it will be seen, have appeared very recently in magazines or newspapers and have been included, usually where illustrative quotations were lacking or inadequate, for the sake of completeness.

The Latin names of the birds and creatures listed in Chapter IV, 4.2, according to the newest available taxonomy, which supersede those given in the text, are written beside the relevant entries, even if there has been no change in the nomenclature.

It is hoped that these expansions and alterations will not be an inconvenience to the reader.

JB.
CHAPTER I.

INTRODUCTORY

1.1. General Outline

This dissertation consists in essence of an experiment and a commentary upon it. The text which constitutes Part II is a lexicographical experiment incorporating some features and treatments not usual in lexicography, and Part I consists of a discussion of the problems encountered, principles applied and procedures followed. Neither the matter nor the manner of the experiment, however, lends itself in the present state of our knowledge to the fully impersonal objectivity that is often claimed for the experiments in the physical sciences. At the same time every effort has been made to establish an unbiased record of the data and to maintain a certain methodological consistency.

The main experimental feature of Part II is that it is an attempt to combine an orthodox, alphabetical dictionary with an experiential categorisation of the vocabulary, without repeating the entire data for each type of treatment. This has been done by means of a series of numbered, classified word-lists with a limited subject index as a guide to their use. The entries themselves, instead of being repeated in the order of their classification, are numbered according to the category or categories to which the word defined belongs. It can then, by means of its number(s), be found in its own lexical or experiential set (or sets) in the categorised section. This part of the work might be better described as lexicology 1 rather than lexicography but does, I think, prove itself to be a useful adjunct to the A - Z lexicon proper.

Apart from the detailed categorisation system the text contains three features not normally included in dictionaries of small compass: illustrative quotations, etymologies and a

1. Ladislav Zgusta in his paper in Lexicography in English (see McDaid and Duckert) p. 14, stresses the differences and the similarity between the two: 'Both lexicology and lexicography study the lexicon, but whereas lexicology concentrates more on general properties and features that can be viewed as systematic, lexicography typically has the so to say individuality of each lexical unit in the focus of its interest. The notion of lexical unit plays a central role in both these branches of linguistics.'
number of tentative parallels between South African and other varieties of English by means of cross-references to items of similar or related meaning or form in the English of Australia, Canada, the U.S.A., Hong Kong, Anglo-India and other 'overseas' English speech communities. Thus waaljapie parallels Australian red-ned (bulk claret); mafutunana, Canadian piblokto (madness among Eskimo women); randlord, Hong Kong tai-pan or Anglo-Indian nabob.

An attempt has also been made to update the system of grammatical designations, and the labelling generally, on principles closer to those of recent linguistic thinking than those of commercially-produced dictionaries tend to be.

The fact that the text is a dictionary of a dialect, as opposed to the total language, has given rise to many of the 'problems' of the title of the dissertation. The first of these is that the dialect element is only part of the total linguistic repertoire of the dialect speaker. From another point of view a 'dialect' may constitute a complete linguistic system in itself, but the primary problem arises from the fact that most of the major 'overseas' manifestations of English have a great deal in common. If it were not so, another entire language would be in question in each case and they would cease to be dialects.

The following definition of dialect from Webster's Seventh New Collegiate Dictionary has been adopted for this work as an initial concept from which to approach South African English: 'A regional variety of language distinguished by features of vocabulary, grammar and pronunciation from other regional varieties and constituting together with them a single language'.

This states the all-important fact which is true of a language as well as of a dialect, that its organisation is threefold, comprising sounds, grammar and vocabulary: 'matching' one might say, the basic linguistic studies Phonology, Syntax and Lexicology.

The dialect lexicographer's initial problem is that he must decide what the dialect element consists of, and then how much or how little merits inclusion. He must decide too, what in the dialect he is describing is 'non-standard' in terms of the internationally intelligible

1. I. V. Arnold (The English Word, 1966) writing of Australian, Canadian and Indian English states 'Each of these has developed a literature of its own, and is characterised by peculiarities in phonetics, spelling, grammar and vocabulary'. Chapter XIII, p. 245.
1 Since the material is non-standard, it is likely that the standard lexicographical treatment of items will need to be modified in various ways, particularly in the case of the grammatical material and of the numerous loan-words current in daily use among South Africans. The inevitable concomitant of a large body of loan-words is a lexicographical treatment which becomes a hybrid between the bilingual and the explanatory.

Other substantial problems have been those of evolving a phonetic notation to fit a large number of non-English 'borrowed' sounds; of devising labelling to cover usages and 'status' of varying kinds, and perhaps most difficult of all, finding for the intractable material of dialect grammar a reasonably succinct treatment for lexicographical purposes.

1.2 Decisions

All lexicography must involve decision-making and choice: dialect lexicography is not unique in this. Even at the level of the minutiae of definition some aspects of meaning are shown and others omitted '... Men rarely consider the whole meaning of a word. No lexical definition can reflect the whole impression the defined word makes on the mind'.

The history of English lexicography reflects of course a general movement from a prescriptive to an ostensibly descriptive approach. Dr Johnson's Preface to An English Dictionary (1755) admits that '... no dictionary of a living tongue can ever be perfect, since while it is hastening to publication, some words are budding and some falling away ...' 'Those who have been persuaded to think well of my design require it should fix our language, and put a stop to those alterations which time and chance have hitherto been suffered to make in it without opposition. With this consequence I will confess I flattered myself for a while, but I now begin to fear that I have indulged expectations which neither reason nor experience can justify.' He adds that the lexicographer should be derided who 'shall imagine that his dictionary can embalm his language and secure it from corruption and decay ...' - confessions that stand in a somewhat

1. Ladislav Zgusta comments on this in his Manual of Lexicography (1971): 'The dialect dictionaries can be worked out in two different ways: either the dictionary offers complete information on the lexicon of the respective dialect or local form of language without reference to any other dialects or forms; or the dictionary lists and explains only what is different from another dialect or, usually, from what is considered the standard national form', p. 205.

ironic contrast to the legislative tone of his earlier proposals in *The Plan of a Dictionary of the English Language* (1747): 'The chief intent of it is to preserve the purity and ascertain the meaning of our English idiom!' with the further claim that 'By tracing every word to its original, and not admitting, but with great caution, any of which no original can be found, we shall secure our language from being over-run with cant, from being crowded with low terms, the spawn of folly or affectation, which arise from no just principles of speech ...'.

Sir James Murray's Preface to the first volume of *A New English Dictionary* (1888) claims an objective coverage of his basic data in the following often quoted passage: 'The aim of this dictionary is to present in alphabetical series the words which have formed the English vocabulary from the time of the earliest records down to the present day, with all the relevant facts concerning their form, sense-history, pronunciation, and etymology. It embraces not only the standard language of literature and conversation, whether current at the moment or obsolete, or archaic, but also the main technical vocabulary, and a large measure of dialectal usage and slang.'

This, Albert H. Marckwardt has pointed out, 'contains not one word about fixing the language, about proscription or prescription of any kind. Operating on this basis, the lexicographer contents himself with setting down the record, leaving its interpretation to the reader.'

It is interesting to note that Murray, below his diagram in the first page of what he calls *General Explanations*, remarks tangentially on loan-words, a major concern to the dialect lexicographer: 'To every man the domain of "common words" widens out in the direction of his own reading, research, business, provincial or foreign residence, and contracts in the direction with which he has no practical connexion: no one man's English is all English!'

Many years later the editors of Webster's *Third International Dictionary* (1961) attempted to carry the tradition of objectivity even further in their celebrated treatment of such sensitive, controversial items as ain't which sparked off a major controversy reflected by Sledd and Ebbitt.

1.3 Selection of Items

The much publicised objectivity of this and other modern dictionaries obscures, however, the lexicographer's basic problem of which items to include and which to omit, though this is admirably represented in Sir James Murray's famous diagram 1 of the common words of English in relation to its specialised vocabularies in the Preface to Volume I of *A New English Dictionary*, and in his comment that 'practical utility has some bounds and a Dictionary has definite limits: the lexicographer must, 'draw the line somewhere' in each diverging direction'.

In the first place it is impossible for even the largest of dictionaries to cover the entire vocabulary. The first edition of the great Oxford *New English Dictionary* is reputed to contain about 450,000 headwords. Yet the South African Army Language Bureau has, according to Brigadier J.H. Picard 2, over half a million items of military terminology on file. While this figure may include items from a number of different languages, it does indicate the remarkable proliferation of technical and specialised vocabularies in the modern world, and the impossibility of reflecting all these vocabularies in a single English-language dictionary of manageable size.

Small-scale dictionaries must, accordingly, be even more drastically selective. Barnhart 3 explains that consideration of price and format tend to limit the ordinary 'desk' dictionary to a total number of headwords of the order of 120,000 or 150,000; a substantial drop from the figure of 450,000 in the original Oxford English Dictionary 4.

For the dialect lexicographer the problem of selection is still more acute. He covers, as is suggested above, only a sector of the vocabulary, that sector characteristic of the dialect which is his chosen field. His first problem in this regard is that of the overlap between every major dialect of English and what may be described as the 'common core' of the language, that is, the definition of an 'Americanism', a 'South Africanism' or as the case may be.

This problem is considerably extended when the dialect under study happens to constitute one of the languages of a multilingual society, as

1. L.C. Eksteen in his paper *Die Leksikologie van Afrikaans* (Taalsette 9, 1969) also draws the distinction verbally and diagrammatically between the core or kernwoordeskat and the peripheral or randwoordeskat with the extended or uitgebreide kernwoordeskat occupying the territory between them.
2. Personal communication.
in the case of South African English. Most South Africans know, or are acquainted with, more languages than one. Prima facie, any speaker of two languages can borrow any item of his L2 into his L1. In practice he probably borrows only selectively, say lexical rather than structural items, and among lexical items those for which the resources of his L1 are in one way or another insufficient. But even when this constraint is taken into account, the dialect lexicographer in a multilingual situation is confronted with enormous arrays of loan-words or potential loan-words, receding in the case of South African English into the total vocabularies of Afrikaans, Xhosa, Zulu and the other languages of the Republic.

A further complication is that for a given L1 in a multilingual society, different individuals and groups will make different sets of borrowings from the second or other languages available to them, and many of these borrowings will feature in texts and/or records available to the lexicographer.

In this situation, short of a comparative computer-analysis of impossibly large bodies of material, there is at present no substitute for personal judgements of what are the 'established' items of South African English like braai and stoep rather than nonce-words such as waspop or wikkeldoele (go-go dancer). Personal judgements, however, may be merely capricious, or to a certain extent data-based. For this text I have had access to the files of the Dictionary of South African English on Historical Principles, which contain much of my own reading, and this, supplemented by other numerous personally recorded items, particularly in the case of the corpus of dialect grammar material, and other reading, does, I hope, provide a reasonably solid basis of data.

A further problem is that whereas orthodox lexicography relies largely upon written (and usually printed) texts, the dialect lexicographer, because much of his material never gets into print, has to rely much more heavily upon personal observations of the spoken language.

1.4 Dialect Lexicography

The dialect lexicographer, dealing as he does with non-standard and often contentious material, treads scholastically and socially dangerous paths: not for him the role of Dr Johnson's lexicographer.

'a harmless drudge, a maker of dictionaries.' He occupies what James Sledd has used as a title to one of his works The Lexicographer's Uneasy Chair. Drudgery is certainly to a certain extent his portion, but much of this is the very real mental exertion of decision. He must decide and constantly decide what, for him, are the manifestations of the dialect which he treats, and take the responsibility for these decisions. Even Dr Johnson remarked in his Plan of a Dictionary (1747) that 'It was not easy to determine by what rule of distinction the words of this dictionary were to be chosen.' The dialect lexicographer runs at all times the risk of having levelled at him, as I have already had, the accusation that he is 'giving currency' to undesirable material by including it in a dictionary. This is of course nonsense: nevertheless, it is not at present easy to convince the average educated person that a dictionary does not and should not prescribe or lay down absolutes but rather that it describes the language observed in use: that it represents 'not the truth of things but the truth of usage', and that for the lexicographer the definition of a word is not an arbitrary artefact of his own opinions or imaginings, but a summary of its uses. As Wittgenstein later put it 'For a large class of cases the meaning of a word is its use in the language.'

A further problem which faces him is the all too prevalent notion that 'dialect' is a nasty word signifying material in questionable taste, typified by stage or cartoon presentations of bucolic characters leaning on fences saying 'Arr, but he do be 'un of the gurt varmers', or similar ridiculous representations of non-standard speech.

That this notion is not only current among the uninformed was brought home to me when I described this work as dialect lexicography to the editor of the Oxford English Dictionary who appeared shocked by such a formulation and said 'Well, I suppose I must revise my idea of dialect.' Harold B. Allen remarks in Part II of Lexicography in English 'Until quite recently dictionary-makers were not receptive to the idea that words may be good words even though they

2. Antoine Arnauld trans. La Logique ou L'Art de Penser, Chapter XIV, p. 89.
5. Part II Dialectology and the Dictionary (see McDavid and Duckert, 1973) p. 50.
have currency in a limited region. The history of attitudes towards usage reveals that for many centuries regionalisms have been derided by people writing about their language', and further that 'Even the scholarly acceptance of the legitimacy of dialect studies in the last third of the 19th century did not affect the general notion that dialectalisms are substandard if not plainly incorrect.'

For purposes of this text, dialect is taken basically to mean that form of the language current in a particular speech community, whatever its size, and in this case as I shall later hope to show, a remarkably non-homogenous one.

1.5 South African English

In attempting to define South African English, as I have interpreted this term for the preparation of the draft dictionary which constitutes Part II, I have taken as a basis not the purists' view that South African English is the English of White English-speaking South Africans, but the broader and to me more realistic description given by N.G. Sabbagha: 'South African English is a regional dialect, that is a variety of speech used by a particular community in a specific area. It is the variety of English which is spoken in South Africa and which has acquired its distinctive characteristics partly through the contact of other languages spoken in South Africa. Of these by far the most influential has been Afrikaans (formerly known as Cape Dutch) ... What should not be overlooked is that the interaction of languages in South Africa is multilingual rather than bilingual. English is used as a second language not only by most Afrikaans-speaking South Africans, but also by a large number of non-whites (Coloureds, Bantu and Indians). These speakers, in their use of English, are inevitably influenced by the sound system and the structure of whatever language happens to be their mother tongue ...' Sabbagha adds: 'an investigation into the varieties of South African English should prove to be valuable.'

This account does, I think, justify my view that 'South African English' is not the dialect of a single restricted group but the lingua franca for many groups among whom, or many of whom, there is no

2. There has been no room within the compass of a lexicographical-lexicological study to explore varieties of pronunciation. An extensive exploration of Indian English speech has been made by Dr Devamoni Bhugwan. Thesis title: An Investigation into the Use of English by Indians in South Africa with special reference to Natal. UNISA 1970.
other means of communication. In fact, as Sabbagha states there
are varieties of South African English. It is to these varieties
that I have tried in a small way to do justice. The strongest
influence, as Sabbagha and others have pointed out, has been that of
speakers of Afrikaans as mother-tongue. This appears both in
aspects of grammar carried over into English, and of course in
many loan-words which might by now be said to be almost equally
the property of South Africans whose mother-tongue is English.

From the black African world and what I have called 'Oriental
South Africa' there are selections of items, some, naturally, better
known than others.

The argument can be, and has been, raised that so broad an
interpretation of the speech community includes many speakers and
writers to whom English is not the mother tongue. This is, of course,
true. I think, however, that one can validly argue that the lingua
franca situation in a multilingual country does transcend that of whether
the language is the speakers' L1 or L2. It is for this reason that I
have included in the title of the dictionary a fairly comprehensive
subtitle: 'The forms, features, adaptations and borrowings charac­
teristic of English in South Africa,' to cover myself against the
criticisms of the purists under whose fire I have constantly been since
the outset of this work.

Treating the varieties or group vocabularies of South African
English under, as it were, a single heading might give the impression
that the material in the text could or would be found in the speech of
any single South African. Clearly this is not the case. Many, or
most, of the more specialized group vocabulary items are likely to
be unknown to most other speakers unless they have made particular
contact with or study of the relevant group, as is the case with
anthropologists, Orientalists and experts in Malay studies or in
African languages. This point is explained in what is designed to
be the general introduction to the published text at the beginning of
Part II, and in the notes preceding Categories 2 African World and
25 Oriental South Africa in Chapter IV, 4.2.

1. Dr Bughwan cites Professor L. W. Lanham as listing English
as a means of communication among Indians as one of the 'five
'dialects' of English in South Africa. [An Investigation into the
Use of English by Indians in South Africa with special reference to
Natal, UNISA 1970.]
The extensive inclusion of loan words - the 'borrowings' of the subtitle - is not peculiar to this work or to South African English. I. V. Arnold\(^1\), writing in Leningrad in 1966 upon Canadian, United States, Australian and Indian English, says\(^1\) The vocabulary of all the variants is characterised by a high percentage of borrowings from the language of the people who inhabited the land before the English colonizers came. Many of them denote some specific realia of the new country: local animals, plants or weather conditions, new social relations, new trades and conditions of labour. The local words penetrate into the English language and later on may become international, if they are of sufficient interest and importance ...\(^5\) A. C. Partridge\(^2\) writing on the history of English in South Africa makes a very similar comment: 'The growth of English within a new colony's concerns is largely lexicographical. Almost all the vocabulary added to the English tongue at the Cape was the work of the name-givers - naturalists, anthropologists, ethnographers, map makers and travellers with other human interests.'

The Australian and New Zealand Supplement to the Pocket Oxford Dictionary\(^3\) contains among its nearly 1700 items 234 (14% of the whole) from the aboriginal and Maori languages \(\text{compared with about 200 from the African languages in well over 3000 items}\)\(^4\). This is an interesting contrast with South African English for which, as Sabbagha says 'of these \[other languages\] by far the most influential has been Afrikaans.' Loan words in the text of Part II from other languages are relatively few and far between the 'Afrikanerisms' which have been described as follows by W. S. Mackie\(^5\):

'By Afrikanerisms we mean Afrikaans words and idioms that have been taken over into South African English, that is, into the regional dialect of English that is spoken in South Africa by English South Africans. ... In a bilingual country it is natural that the two languages, in this case Afrikaans and English, should influence each other. In dealing with the influence of Afrikaans on English, however, there is an initial difficulty. There are a good many varieties\(^6\) of South African English differentiated partly by region and to a greater extent by social class ...' Further, he says, 'It is unlikely that any English South African would call a boomslang a tree snake.'

4. See Introduction to Part II, and Part I Chapter 4.2.
6. These varieties are within the group of 'English South Africans' cited above, and cannot be equated with those described by Sabbagha.
or use maize instead of mealie, or fir cone instead of dennebol...'
and adds that 'as ... the English language has long had the habit
of being hospitable to words from other languages, it is probable
that the adoption of Afrikaans words into South African English will
increase in the future.'

Few people with an ear for language would, I think, dispute the
prophetic nature of the last remark, especially listening to the
speech of children. It is noticeable that numerous Afrikaans words
are used by them with such naturalness that it is hard to believe
that some even register that the words are not English. The
following samples of the regular usage of a seventeen year old
schoolgirl of very average 'school style' ability in Afrikaans
(in fact a non-speaking knowledge of the language) contains items
not included in the dictionary as yet.

I'm getting hardgat now - I'm not going to let them
hurt my feelings any more.
I've got on my coat and jersey - don't treat me like
a bloody waspop.
You should have seen how she carried on at the dance -
I always heard she was a proper warm patat (sexy piece).

It is interesting to note that while there are quite adequate
English slang items for two of them, 'hard-arsed' and 'hot number',
the Afrikaans terms are used from choice.

The regular adoption of loan words, especially by the young, I
can see as being in no way reprehensible; unless of course too many
colloquialisms creep into their written language or into the spoken
language on formal occasions. For such contexts, both English
colloquialisms or borrowed ones may be equally undesirable, and if
loan-words are used in the company of foreigners who do not under­
stand them, this is simply bad manners.

1.6 Attitudes to South African English.

Dire warnings of 'Anglikaans' and other unrealistic Canute-like
behaviour will not stem this particular tide and I see no alternative
to an adjustment of the wholesale condemnatory attitude towards South
African English by teachers, and the ambivalent one of so many South
African English speakers. A.C. Partridge remarks 'The English­
speaking population is not, in fact, language-proud and is touchy only

1. I notice also the unattractive terms drol and poep(hol), as modes
of address or reference, in regular currency among school-boys in
preference to English slang terms.

2. A.C. Partridge Standard Encyclopaedia of Southern Africa, English
in its uncritical reverence for received English pronunciation.¹
This, I think, is a somewhat dated view and reflects the struggle, long
ago lost for a 'pure English accent'. L. W. Lanham some years ago
postulated a Standard or 'received' South African English pronunciation,
some of which goes further than I personally can accept - (the diphthong
of where for example is rendered by him as a pure vowel - [\v]).²
Deplorable as some of this seems, it is, nevertheless, a more realistic
appraisal of the question of accent than that of Partridge or of Hopwood³.

I. V. Arnold,⁴ writing for Russian students of English, says 'Those
who think that the Americans must look to the British for a standard are
wrong, and vice versa it is not for the American to pretend that English
in Great Britain is inferior to the English he speaks. At present there
is no single "correct" English and the American, Canadian and Australian
English have developed standards of their own.' It is noteworthy that
he continues '... the aim of this book was to describe mainly the vocabu-
lary of British English, as it is the British variant that is received and
studied in Soviet Schools.'

The efforts of some South African teachers to stamp out borrowed
dialect words from their pupils' speech and writing, and the attitude of
many educationists towards the 'fight for pure English' induce at times a
certain shamefacedness among South African English speakers, resulting
in such absurdities as borrowing a loan word like barbecue to avoid
saying braai, or the architect's adoption of the genteelism terrace for
stoep.

The research worker preparing a dictionary of South African English
encounters very often a certain hostility, especially from teachers,
towards the project - primarily as previously mentioned, the criticism,
that it is only going to be a slang dictionary at best, and full of terms
better forgotten than perpetuated by being given the status of appearing
in a dictionary. What most South Africans do not know is that there have

2. L. W. Lanham, and A. Traill Pronounce English Correctly, 1965
been extensive explorations of the dialects of other English speech communities and that South African English is one of the last to receive detailed modern treatment.

The attempt to stamp out dialect usage from the speech of South Africans and reduce the result to the travesty of Standard British English mentioned by Partridge - since in very few cases can the accent be obliterated - is one that can only fail.

The teacher who feels strongly that South African English is a bad thing would do better to concentrate on teaching his pupils to write a clear and reasonably simple form of the standard literary norm, without excluding borrowed items for which there are no valid substitutes. A simplistic policy of exclusion can only lead to circumlocution and self-consciousness.

To inculcate, however, an ability to recognise and avoid sub-standard dialect grammar such as 'she was busy lying in bed', 'a person doesn't know what to do with yourself on honeymoon' or 'he's taller than what I am' is likely to be of greater value than to try to make a child believe that it is deeply and dreadfully wrong to write 'I saw a gogga under the rusbark', or to force him to believe that some substitute must be found for a 'span of oxen which must of course be 'yoked' and 'unyoked' instead of inspanned and outspanned. Correctness in grammatical usage in speech or writing is, I feel sure, of greater long-term value than a censorship of vocabulary.

Obviously a child must learn that the informal register of speech cannot be carried over lock stock and barrel into his writing, but this has surely more to do with appropriateness to situation, which should automatically exclude certain usages, than with overlooking the existence or banning the use of a large sector of his everyday vocabulary.

The child who describes his new teacher as a 'lekker ou' is unlikely even to be aware that the words he is using are not English ones, whereas being required to refer to him as a 'good fellow' or a 'jolly decent chap' would very probably give him the feeling of speaking a language not his own.

So deeply is much of our vocabulary entrenched in our usage that I feel outside pressures to stamp it out could even be dangerous in the case of a child, as too much interference with his speaking of his mother tongue might have the effect of turning what is his most deeply familiar and taken-for-granted possession into something strange and inimical,
to be re-mastered in a new and alien way.

The written language of the child is a different matter, and grammatical conformity and avoidance of over-colloquial terminology is something which can with advantage be taught and learned.

What then of the adult? Many, if not most, South Africans use and probably enjoy their colourful and explicit vocabulary to the full, unless of course they have been brainwashed or made ashamed of it in childhood. Obviously those parts or aspects of the vocabulary used vary from individual to individual depending on his character, age, occupation and interests, and from context to context according to the degree of formality which the situation requires.

1.7 Scope of the South African English Vocabulary

Certain groups of words are more likely to be in general use than others. For example, few South Africans, even school teachers, would be likely to avoid - or condemn- the terms of the vocabulary of the landscape and topography. Veld, vlei, drift, donga, koppie, krans, and their fellows are so well established as to be unassailable, many of them having world-wide recognition. Even the 'pure English' fetishist would scarcely expect 'glen' for kloof or 'savannah' or some such substitute for veld. It is conceivable, however, that he might prefer to dignify vlei with 'lake' and krans with 'cliff' even at the expense of accuracy or explicitness. The names of foods, fruits, vegetables, dishes, edible fish, some drinks, certain garments, and numerous articles of household furniture and equipment, though not generally known beyond our shores, are more or less indispensable to South African speakers. One needs only to translate 'stinkwood rusbank with riempie back and seat' - 'Open-style settle of indigenous timber Octaea bullata with back and seat of leather thongs woven in open basket work pattern' to see how far the avoidance of three common items of the South African English vocabulary takes one into verbiage. This is obviously an extreme case, but the verkrampte purist asking for 'tangerines' instead of nartjies, or 'muscat grapes' instead of hanepoots would almost certainly find himself in difficulties.

A large category of many words and wide application is that of the everyday, and less everyday, vocabulary of farming in this country, (about 430 of the 3000 odd items in the text of Part II). It is interesting to note that farming terminology, mainly sheep farming, takes up 156 items, 9.17% of the nearly seventeen hundred listed in the Supplement of Australian and New Zealand English to the Pocket Oxford Dictionary of 1969. The 'sectional' language, or some of it, of farmers in this country may well be mystifying to many townspeople and therefore not as generally familiar.
as those terms concerning the landscape and domestic articles.

Most aspects of the vocabulary have varying applicability according to the interests of the speaker concerned. A keen fisherman will be familiar with a set of names which are completely strange to most people, and the naturalist, be he botanist, zoologist or ornithologist, will know a multitude of terms unknown to most men in the street. These specialist vocabularies are very sparingly treated for purposes of this text for reasons discussed elsewhere (Chapter IV, 4.1). The historian also will be au fait with many terms unknown to most, as will be the anthropologist, the lawyer or the man on the mines. Nevertheless, limited or not in their application, these vocabularies, at least the less esoteric parts of them, must be treated as explicitly and usefully as possible by the lexicographer of South African English.

It is difficult to dismiss vocabularies covering such fields as these as the 'slang' which is all too often applied as a blanket term to South African English as a whole.

South African English is no different from any English dialect in being full of colloquialisms. No spoken language short of the most formal in both context and content can be otherwise, since by definition and etymology colloquialisms are those usages which occur in speech. The colloquialisms of Australian and New Zealand English are 10.6% of the items (181), and specialist dictionaries such as those of Captian Francis Grose or Eric Partridge, or even the earlier Dictionary of the Canting Crew of B. E. Gent show by their size and the numerousness of their items that there has never been any shortage of terms of this kind. Actual 'bad' words and expressions which are, of course, legion in such works, are relatively few in South African English. The treatment of these is discussed in Chapter IV., 4.1 and 4.3.

1. A point made by Sir James Murray in his General Explanations in the introduction to a New English Dictionary 1888 and quoted on p. 4.
3. See Reference: Bibliography Section 1.
4. See Reference: Bibliography Section 1.
Ordinary, harmless if mildly vulgar colloquial terms are extremely numerous in South African English. These for the most part are collected into two groups for this text, one being Expressions, Idioms and Slang (Category 10, see Chapter IV 4.2) and the other Exclamations and Interjections (Category 9, see IV 4.2). These groups or categories, particularly the first, contain widely diversified terms.

An inescapable part of the life and language of South Africa is politics with its attendant terminology, some of which has spread across the world: apartheid has been used to describe the evils of the caste system in India, and verkramp used of the Irish by The Times. This vocabulary is very thoroughly established largely through the press, primarily via parliamentary reports and news items, though political columnists like Hogarth de Hoogh of the Johannesburg Sunday Times have done much to consolidate the position of new, tentatively-adopted political terminology by repeated use. The acceptance of political terms has not, I think, been a matter for controversy. Since 1948 when an Afrikaans-speaking government took over, the names of their policies and institutions have been adopted into the national vocabulary as a matter of course. Certain terms which have a brief, ad hoc, topical life, such as broedertwis which was revived at the time of the split in the Nationalist Party, and others, although they may appear, as concepts, promising material for the vocabulary, simply fall away as the need or occasion for them recedes into political history or obscurity.

More controversial is the question of designation of people, whether it be the possible choices among Kaffir, native, Bantu and African or the question of modes of address, like the government attempt to introduce Mnumzana (Mna.) to avoid addressing or referring to an African as Mr. All terminology of this kind is tricky ground for the South African, and a field in which it is necessary to tread delicately, as reports in the press have shown on the use of boy and kaffir. It is perhaps in changing modes of address that the winds of changing opinion and attitudes can be first felt, as for example when one newspaper after another adopted Mr for referring to blacks.

Others never change: Uncle and Auntie for older friends, especially in the country districts, live side by side with Oom and Tannie, and Oupa and Ouma can be heard even in 'very English' families.

More changeable in comparison with these are the modes of referring to people of other kinds, classes or races, which often seem to have bursts of fashionable use. Items like hairy(back), rock(spider), krev, rope.

1. These items are listed in Chapter IV, 4.2 Categories 9 and 10.
crunchie, gom, pops, mun, choc, goffel, geelbek, all of them somewhat unattractive colloquial terms, seem to have fluctuating life and popularity.

It can, I think, be seen from these examples of words and word-groups, that the vocabulary of South African English has its place in almost all aspects of life and experience, and that to the South African speaker it should not be a matter for shame or self-deprecation, but part of his heritage for better or for worse.

1.8 The Stranger and the South African English Vocabulary

The problems of the stranger to South Africa, be he settler, traveller or one who has come from another, less settled part of this continent, are very different from those of the South African, and likely to be less coloured by prejudiced attitudes.

One of the aims of the text must naturally be to elucidate for the stranger unfamiliar terms which he may encounter in our country, in the press, in shops, in daily conversation, traffic signs, strange and unfamiliar sounding place names and even cryptic menus.

Perusal even of a single sale page of a 'big city' newspaper printed say in Port Elizabeth, may bring him face to face with advertisements offering: Boergoat kapaters, unwisseld to two-tooth hamels, Africander type tollies, Dorpers, Dormers, Inkona cattle, a five-gaited Boerperd and other unfamiliar creatures, and, what is more, a weird-sounding 'No Objection Permit' may be required to be produced at the sale. A household auction advertisement may offer a very old stinkwood rusbank, yellowwood and blackwood riempie chairs, several bankies, a country koskas, a jonkmanskas, a yellowwood wakis, possibly even a bakkis and an up-to-the minute bedroom suite in kiaat. Should the newcomer be interested in property, he may encounter a beautiful stand at some seaside resort, a zinc-roofed dwelling in some back block or even a Cape Dutch style mansion in the best part of town. Farm advertisements may produce a bewildering variety of strange terms: well-camped, irrigation farm, 'improvements include a homestead', dry lands, land camps, grazing camps, good mixed veld, rooigras, oulandsgras, fat-lamb production, 'well watered by fountains and several boreholes', vlei, veld, vlakteveld, sheep and cattle kraals, good hunting and an excellent proposition for game ranching. Furthermore, the place which is offered for sale may have a quite extraordinary name, Nooitgedacht, Welverdient, Morgenster, Mooi-Uitsig, Schoonberg, Twist-Niet, completely unpronounceable and meaningless to most non-South Africans, and equally strange names will face him wherever he goes.
The same paper may tell him that a new dominee has been appointed in Heilbron; a driver had a lucky escape when his car was submerged in a swollen spruit near De Doorns; the body of an unidentified Coloured man was found in a donga last night; the platteland farmers are complaining that swarthaak is destroying the veld in certain areas; battle sticks, pangas and assegais were used in a faction fight between two impis of tribesmen at a kraal in the Kranskop district of Natal; jukskei teams will be competing at the week-end and the match will be followed by volkspele and a braaivleis at Brakkul, though the mealie season has been disappointing. Elsewhere he may read that Bantu homeland leaders are meeting to discuss the implications of separate development; that a party leader slams petty apartheid; the verligtes have been criticised by the verkramptes; the Administrator of the Cape will be unveiling a plaque; the Herstigtes will be fighting the next election; a predikant from Rietfontein writing in the Kerkbode is condemning mini-skirts; there has been a conviction under the Immorality Act; Mr 'Boet' X has had a new pacemaker inserted; a student has been arrested for being in possession of zols containing a mixture of tobacco, dagga and malpitte; Tant Maria Yhas made a rousing speech about the re-naming of Despatch, and an indignant letter to the editor pointing out that apartheid and baasskap are being practised among the upper class Coloured community upon their own people.

In the shops he will encounter new names, often for familiar items. Tangerines are 'naarjies', a cantaloupe is a 'spanspek', little yellow jewel-like things are, unaccountably, Cape gooseberries, curious little green marrows are referred to as 'gems' and sweetcorn cobs as 'mealies'. A butcher may display for sale sosaties, soek and boerewors, and offer chops suitable for braaiving and skirtig for rations. The grocer or supermarket will have mealie meal, samp, mealie rice, maizeza and mabela (malted or otherwise), suurdeeg, maas, or even mahewu spelt half a dozen ways, in cartons, maaskaas, biltong, jars marked 'breyani' and pickled fish. The wine merchant's shop will be called a bottle-store, or perhaps an off-sales and may in addition to the familiar wines and spirits offer for sale Hanepoot, Nagmaalwyn, Jerepigo and buchu brandy, as well as the Vander Hum he may have encountered in Europe. A fishmonger will offer kingklip, stockfish and kob, and possibly galjoen, or else say apologetically he

1. A 65-year-old-man ... was 'blown off' the breakwater ... last night and lay for 13 hours among the dolosse, fearful that he would be drowned by the rising tide. Argus 27, 9, 75, p. 2.
has only 'reds' today, bony but well flavoured or suggest a Miss Lucy or a daggerhead, or perhaps some smoked snoek from the Cape. The menu at his hotel may well offer all of these, though Miss Lucy will probably appear as red stumpnose (or stumpneus) and the snoek may be presented 'smoored', while the meat dishes may well include curry with sambals, bobotie or tomato bredie.

Clothing seems more familiar, and he may have already bought British made 'veldschoenen' overseas, though 'children's broekies' and advertisements for 'long sleeve(d) skippers' may seem odd. Trying out his newly acquired vehicle which the dealer called a 'bakkie' and mysteriously advertised as 'for sale voetstoots' he may find himself adjured to 'Ry Versigtig' some distance before the English sign says 'Drive Carefully!', and may repeatedly encounter 'Stadig' as he drives through something called, perhaps, Hell's Poort.

On a very superficial acquaintance then, the stranger will encounter a surprisingly varied vocabulary long before he has scratched the surface of our history or laws, and without having encountered a single wild bird or beast, flower or tree, or having really begun to make the acquaintance of the terms or customs of Black Africa. It is noticeable also that he has not found an ou or some kërel to offer him a sopie or a dop, to tell him of his babelaas, his bokkie or even his new chorrie or to ask him to jol round for a goef. In fact the whole of the colloquial vocabulary is still beyond his ken.

1.9 Categorisation

It can also be seen that the words he may come across 'in a day's march' fall naturally into certain groupings. These groupings form the nucleus of the experimental categorisation scheme adopted for the dictionary. A rough examination of these approximately one hundred and twenty words and twenty three formatives of the random place names suggested may serve to illustrate this.

(a) Afrikander, Boer goat, Boerperd, Dorper, Dormer, hamel, Inkona cattle, fat lamb, (un)wisselled, No Objection Permit, camp, land camp, grazing camp, well camped, improvement, irrigation farm, kraal, dry lands, oulandsgras, rooigras, veld, mixed veld, vlei-veld, vlakteveld, fat lamb production, game ranching, hunting, fountains, boreholes, swarthaak.
(b) donga, spruit, vlei, vlakte, veld, fountain, poort, berg, platteland.

(c) stinkwood, yellowwood, blackwood, kiaat, rusbank, riempiemiair, bankie, koskas, jonkmanaskaas, wakis, bakkis, stand, zinc roof, Cape Dutch style.

(d) faction fight, battle stick, panga, assegai, kraal, impi, tribesmen.

(e) dominee, Kerkbode, predikant.

(f) jukskie, volkspele, braaivleis.

(g) bakkie, Ry Versigtig, Stadig.

(h) vel(d)skoen, broeikies, skippers.

(i) boet, tante, Coloured, Bantu.

(j) na(a)rtjie, Cape gooseberry, spanspek, gem (squash), mealie.

(k) ‘reds’, red stumpnose, Miss Lucy, daggerhead, snoek, stockfish, kob, kingklip, stompeus, galjoen.

(l) spek, sosaties, boerewors, skirtng, rations, braai, smoor, sambal, bobotie, bredie, pickled fish, atjar, blatjang, breyani, mealie meal, mealie rice, samp, mabela, suurdeeg, maizena, maas, mahewu, maaskaas, biltong.

(m) homelands, separate development, petty apartheid, verligte, verkrampte, overseas, apartheid, Administrator, Herstigtes, Immorality Act, baasskap, exit permit, voetstoots.

(n) dagga, malpitte, zols.

(o) bottle store, off sales, hanepoot, buchu brandy, jerepigo, nagmaalwyn, Van der Hum.

(p) Names: poort, bron, berg, fontein, krans, kop, kuil, de, niet, doorns, riet, wel, nooit, brak, schoon, mooi, uitsig, heil, morgen, ster, twist, gedacht, verdient.

It is noticeable that several of the words in this sample may fit into more than a single category, in particular the place name formatives.
which are, as 'topographical' nouns in regular use for features of the South African landscape, independent entries in the Landscape and Places category. Similarly, the timbers in the furniture section, yellowwood, stinkwood and blackwood feature among the trees just as panga, assegai and battle stick will belong both in the 'African World' category and that of Hunting, Weapons and War, as will faction fight and impi.

The categories should, I hope, prove helpful in listing, both for the stranger and the South African user, words which belong together in such a way that an immediate 'overview' of the words having bearing on a particular topic, or constituting a broad lexical set, is possible. Thus a settler or visitor interested in farming will find Category 11 a list of about 430 words with bearing on stock farming, animal husbandry, agriculture and pastoral topics, all together as a set, all alphabetically available in the main body of the entries, each marked with the category number 11 (and any other appropriate one) to be looked up individually at need from a ready reference table to category headings. Similarly the vocabulary of politics and Government is listed at 4b State. 1

Specialist vocabularies, botany, ornithology, ichthyology, zoology, herpetology 2 etc. he will find on the whole poorly catered for, but it is hoped that the Bibliography will list useful titles for those who wish to delve deeper than the everyday 'run of the mill' flora and fauna found in this text.

The separation of the more frequent place name formatives into separate entries will enable the stranger to check up on many of the multiple structures of the place names of our country discussed in detail in Chapter IV 4.4 and briefly at 4.2 (Category 27) and, I hope, give him the satisfaction of knowing that the name of the farm he is thinking of buying means, say, 'Well Earned', 'Morning Star' or 'Beautiful View.'

1.10 Other Features of the Text

The Pronunciation Key, treated in detail in Chapter II, has been made as simple as possible for the newcomer who speaks no Afrikaans but who may have a smattering of French, German or

1. Category 4 Church and State is subdivided as (a) and (b)

2. See Chapter IV 4.1 on the 'randwoordeskat' of South African English, also Chapter I p.5 first paragraph and footnote 1.
Italian. As far as possible an analogue from one or more of these languages is given for non-English consonants, vowels and diphthongs.

There are two further aspects of the text which have bearing on the problems of the stranger. The labelling system discussed in detail in Chapter 4.3 is designed to avoid as far as possible pitfalls for the unwary by the use of the label Objectionable, (Obj.) as a caveat against the use of 'unsuitable' terms of the character of which he is unaware, and Unaccept, for what is, in the wording of the Shorter Oxford Dictionary 'not in decent use.'

The second aspect is really intended equally for the stranger and the non-stranger; that is an attempt at cross reference to other dialects of English in other parts of the world. This is mentioned above and discussed with examples in Chapter IV 4.5. For the South African it is there mainly for interest, but also as an attempt to show that parallels do exist elsewhere, and that the phenomena of dialect are not as isolated as one is apt to think.

For the non-South African however this type of cross reference may be, in certain cases, really enlightening. If he is familiar with the vocabulary of British India, nullah placed side by side with donga, sahib with baas, nabob or the tai-pan of Hong Kong, with landlord and so on, this should add a useful dimension of meaning for him, as will the comparison of the sawdust nobility or lumber king with the sugar baron of Natal, for one familiar with Canadian usage. Conversely, though an American will be in little doubt what hunting means in South Africa, the Englishman who envisages himself galloping over his vlakte veld in a pink coat should find enlightenment in this text; as he should with borehole (usually to do with coal mining in England) which to an Australian with his equivalent bore would be no problem. There are particularly interesting parallels between South African English and Australian, Canadian, and also Jamaican English, though these latter items are more tentatively offered.

1.11 South Africanisms

Returning to the problems, for the moment, of the dialect lexicographer, there has been in the case of the preparation of this text, a major naming dilemma, though the basic terms of reference for South African English as conceived for this work, have remained unchanged. The requirements of the research grant,
the Institute for the Study of English (and the publisher) have all required that South African English form part of the title. The precedent set by the tradition, however, is that the suffix -ism be attached to the name of the dialect as in Pettman's Africanderisms, C. P. Swart's Africanderisms: A Supplement to the Rev. Charles Pettman's Glossary of South African Words and Phrases and of Place and Other Names, M. D. W. Jefferies's Afrikanderisms, and further from home A Dictionary of Canadianisms edited by Walter S. Avis, and A Dictionary of Americanisms by Mitford Mathews. There are, on the other hand, The Australian Language, not however a dictionary as such, the Dictionary of Jamaican English, the massive Scottish National Dictionary, the four volume Dictionary of American English on Historical Principles 1 and the really 'way out' title Hobson-Jobson, the glossary of Anglo Indian Terms. 2

The inward struggle for and against the term South Africanisms has been difficult. On the one hand its use would have kept the purists at bay; on the other, as the publisher of the Dictionary pointed out to me some time ago, -ism does all too often carry an unfavourable nuance. He suggested, I think correctly, that -ism was inclined to be associated in many people's minds with solecism and that the work might well be regarded as an anthology of errors. Even the facetious phrase 'logies and isms' places both suffixes in an invidious light.

It is with genuine disquiet, however, that I have abandoned the safe and comfortable mooring South Africanisms. I have too often been attacked with a contemptuous 'Are you even calling that South African English?' or similar comment, not to have the liveliest dread of remarks of this kind from either the informed or the uninformed critic. However, in spite of having learned from experience not to chance my arm, I have opted for the term required of me both for the dictionary itself and for this dissertation.

The Introduction to Part II is that due to appear in the published text. It is written, of course, for the lay person, and in the hope that it will enable the reader to use this handbook either for the indulgence of curiosity, in fact for pleasure, or for the finding of

1. I have not had access to this text edit. Sir William A. Craigie and James R. Hulbert, Chicago 1938-1944.
2. These titles appear in the References: Bibliography, Section I.
useful or interesting information. It sets out, I hope, reasonably simply, what is encompassed for this work, by the term South African English, and explains fairly briefly the aims of the dictionary as well as features peculiar to it, in particular the categorisation given here in Chapter IV 4.2, which is designed to follow the introduction in the published version.

What the text contains is my responsibility, and for me a valid representation, within my terms of reference, of what I have set out to describe. 'But a man is master of only his own speech, not that of other men,' 1.

1. Antoine Arnauld trans. La Logique ou L'Art de Penser, Chapter XIV.
CHAPTER II

The Problems of Phonetic Representation of South African English for a Dialect Dictionary

2.1 Introductory Note

Since the system described in this chapter was devised 1, an international conference on Lexicography in English has been held (June 5th, 6th and 7th, 1972) by the New York Academy of Sciences and its proceedings published as Volume 211, June 8th, 1973 of the Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences. 2

Part III of the Conference, under the Chairmanship of Arthur J. Bronstein was entitled Pronunciation: Theory and Practice. Those contributing to it either/papers or remarks in discussion appear from the proceedings to have been at one in the opinion that the treatment of pronunciation in dictionaries is a tough problem for phoneticians and those employed by commercial companies alike: I quote only one of these participants: Edward Artin of the G. and C. Merriam Co., 3 Springfield Massachusetts. In his paper, entitled Dictionary Treatment of Pronunciation: General, he suggests 'an alternative title might have been "The Joys and Griefs of One Who Has Been for 42 Years a Harmless Drudge" - with perhaps heavy emphasis on the griefs. Indeed griefs there have been, and it seems a safe bet that there is one shared by most who have the job of inserting pronunciations in a general dictionary, namely the actual or purported want of any widespread desire among those who buy such dictionaries for the kind of alphabet that we would prefer to transcribe in. 1

2.2 The Script

The phonetic transcriptions designed for my purposes are in a notation based as far as possible upon that of the International Phonetic Association (hereafter IPA). 4 There are, however, special problems which arise in the transcription of any dialect such as South African

2. Lexicography in English (see McDavid and Duckert).
4. F. G. Cassidy and R. B. Le Page have used the IPA symbols in their Dictionary of Jamaican English (1967).
English (hereafter SAE), which has firstly a large number of borrowed, non-English sounds and secondly a wide range of phonetic materialisations among different speakers. To the phonetician designing a system for non-specialist users, which attempts to cover these in transcription and description, even without typographical or numerical restrictions, they present very real difficulties. There are three major problems:

(i) At the simplest level, anything like an accurate transcription is likely to present printing difficulties, particularly when it is desirable to keep down the number of actual symbols, not only because they are not available as part of a printer's normal stock-in-trade, but also because too many will confuse the reader. A 'broad' transcription which would be easier to print would probably not reflect adequately the sounds it was intended to represent, since use of the length mark as the sole distinguishing feature in transcribing sounds which differ in quality as well as in length e.g. [uː] (pool) [u] (pull), irons out distinctions which should, for our purposes, be maintained. The system has therefore been designed as a fairly 'narrow' one, in spite of the fact that compromises have had to be made in certain cases where analogues for the pronunciation key have proved difficult. (These are discussed in detail in Section 2.3: The Non-English Sounds).

(ii) The second problem is that of the number of variant pronunciations which should be given. This is one of the problems referred to by Bronstein in the Proceedings mentioned in the introductory note to this chapter. Most speakers of SAE use a somewhat anglicised pronunciation of items borrowed from Afrikaans or from the African languages, which are rarely technically 'correct' versions of the originals, and which, in the SAE context would often sound affected if they were. Our primary source for pronunciation, after all, is the dialect speaker of SAE as mother-tongue, not the native speakers of the many languages which have influenced SAE.

It is probably undesirable on the whole to give the impression that SAE, containing as it does items from many languages,
is ordinarily studded with gems of foreign pronunciation as are the idiolects of those few English speakers who enjoy inserting numbers of perfectly articulated French words into everyday conversation, or the Anglo-Indians described as exhibiting 'Pedantic affectation of familiarity with the native languages ...',¹

Variants, therefore, have been kept down to a minimum and alternatives offered only where such knotty items as the diminutive suffixes, or alternative stress patterns occur, or where the choice of [a], [ço] or [o] might seem arbitrary, e.g. Africander.

(iii) The third and greatest difficulty is the description and representation of the non-English sounds in borrowed items without the aid of specialist vocabulary which would confuse and irritate the layman. Normally of course the sounds of English are described in a dictionary by cross reference within the language itself: thus the vowel in earth, spelt as in hearth and heart, but sounding like that of pert, heard, bird and burn, can be indicated by comparison with an item common enough to be unambiguous. In the description of the sounds of SAE, however, cross-reference to other languages is necessary.² Providing a guide for the lay reader untrained in phonetics and possibly without experience of French or German cannot but raise genuine problems of written communication. At best the analogical principle of sound description is inferior to the articulatory; but to the lexicographer preparing an illustrative key to English and Non-English sounds for Non-South African, as well as South African readers, no other method is available. The question of the choice of language/s of exemplification and of analogues immediately arises, and of course some sounds present more difficulties, for varying reasons, than others.

The Non-English sounds, their transcription, description and analogues are dealt with below.

¹ G. Subba Rao Indian Words in English (1969), p. 3.
² There is a parallel problem in exemplifying the qualities of the eight Cardinal vowels: 'As in French si' etc.
2. 3. The Non-English Sounds

2. 3. 1 The Consonants

(1) [r] The rolled (r) optional in such words as poort or kafferboetie is given in parentheses within transcriptions to indicate that it can be, and usually is dispensed with in SAE. It is described as being comparable in quality with that of the rolled 'r' in Scottish English, or that of Afrikaans.

(2) [x] The velar and palatal fricatives as in galjoen and geelbek have been dealt with in transcription by using the symbol for the velar fricative only, [x]. As these two sounds are in complementary distribution, the velar occurring with back vowels and the palatal with front, this simplification seems both justifiable and desirable, particularly as the usual symbol for the palatal fricative [χ] may well be confused with the [s] sound in 'Français'. It would be possible to describe the palatal fricative by analogy to the sound in German ich, but this is too often thought to be [ʃ] as in 'finish' by British English speakers to be a valid comparison for lexicographical purposes.

The description therefore has been limited to 'as in Scottish loch, German ach'.

(3) The voiceless lateral fricative [ɬ] was not included in the earlier draft table of phonetic symbols as at that stage of the work the need for it had not arisen. Items such as hlonipa, kehla, kahle in which [ɬ] would not suffice have made it necessary to adopt this extra symbol. The single example of the voiced lateral fricative so far encountered, amadlozi, clearly would not justify the inclusion of the symbol [ʃ]. Apart from the fact that most speakers of SAE could not and would not use this sound, there is the undesirability of endeavouring to explain a sound which occurs only in Zulu. [ɬ] is therefore used as a compromise, as the use of a voicing diacritic [ɬ] would require technical description beyond the scope of a dictionary pronunciation key.

1. I am assured that the Scottish rolled r is 'entirely different' by Professor L. W. Lanham (personal communication). However I know of no other well-known English dialect with a consistently 'rolled' r, and feel that as an analogue this should serve its purpose.
2. Designed for Towards a Dictionary of South African English, 1971
(4) The palatal plosive [c]. This is of course regular for most Afrikaans speakers but rare for SAE speakers, who would normally use [tʃ] or [k] according to context unless determined to display their ability to pronounce this difficult sound correctly. For purposes of transcription this sound is particularly awkward since a table of phonetic symbols would be somehow incomplete without it, on the one hand, and transcriptions of the tj and dj spellings are likely to reflect the [tʃ] or [k] pronunciations on the other. The consequence of this is that the inclusion of the palatal plosive will involve a regular alternative pronunciation for any word in which it occurs in borrowings from Afrikaans, and a description 'like a k sound produced forward on the hard palate' in the pronunciation key.

(The same sound in combination with w in Xhosa spellings tyw as in utywala obviously is beyond the scope of a simplified pronunciation system of this sort and only the roughest [tʃw] (as in Zulu utshwala as opposed to Xhosa utywala) can be attempted here.)

(5) A closely related problem is that of the clicks. It is clearly unrealistic to expect a lay reader or user of a dictionary to master distinctions between dental, lateral and palatal clicks - let alone their contextually governed variants - or to become au fait with the rather non-representational symbols for them. On the other hand to level them all down to [k] is somewhat cavalier treatment. As a compromise, a note has been added to the table roughly explaining the clicks, and a marker [+] adopted to follow the transcription of any word containing one. This will obviate, for example, the somewhat unsophisticated rendering [tʃkɔ] for Tixo, and will be a relatively undemanding signal that there is more to that particular transcription than meets the eye. This note reads as follows:

1In words borrowed from the African languages the c, x and q spellings represent clicks of three different basic types. c represents the dental click formed behind the teeth on the teeth ridge, rather like the English 'dismay sound' variously spelt tut tut, tch tch, tsk tsk. x or xb represents the lateral click, formed at the side of the mouth, and q the palatal click formed at the hard palate. Approximations are not available for these.

In the interests of simplicity therefore, they are all

1. Professor Willem de Klerk tells me that speakers of Afrikaans can be divided into [k] and [c] speakers. (Personal communication.)
transcribed as [k] sounds, a quite usual SAE way of rendering them.

The presence of a click in a word is indicated by [+] following the transcription thus: Tixo ['tɪkə +']

It is with regret that a proper rationalisation of this knotty phonetic problem has been abandoned for the present text. It is perhaps better, however, to be guilty of cavalier treatment towards a relatively small number of items than towards what may be a relatively large number of users of this text. (For the same reason the implosive [s] has been disregarded.)

The plural markers [-s] vs [-z]. In the transcription of plural nouns the plural marker has normally been transcribed [s] even where the normal English pronunciation of a post-vocalic plural marker would be [z] e.g. ['sævəs 'bʌkɪz]. In the case of ordinary singular nouns only the spelling form is given for the plural, e.g. bankie ['bɑŋki] n, pl -s. An insertion of [-s] or [-z] after 'n. pl -s' would clearly be undesirably complex and messy from the typographical point of view, but it is arguable that a parenthesised plural marker within the pronunciation bracket might be desirable, thus ['bɑŋki(s)]

2.3.2 The Vowels.

The Vowels, as might be expected, are more numerous and more difficult to describe for lexicographical purposes than the few non-English consonants of SAE. The analogical principle must again be followed as far as possible to give approximate sound equivalents. Accurate description of articulations in a dictionary would be irritatingly dull and time-consuming to the non-specialist who requires immediate and simplified answers to pronunciation problems; but 'a as in German 'ach' cannot be other than a very crude approximation to a more linguistically sophisticated user of such a text.

The phonetician, with such an assignment on hand, cannot but
fall between two stools, so an attempt at compromise has been made. Where possible, analogues from more than one European language have been given, and the spellings of the sounds in question in examples from the corpus.

For vowel sounds which normally present an articulatory problem to an English speaker e.g. \[ y \] (syr) and \[ æy \] (huis), a brief description in non-technical terms of how to produce the sound is given e.g. \[ y \] 'As in French rue, German über. This is pronounced like the sound in pea but with closely rounded lips.'

This type of description cannot be regarded as other than somewhat rough and ready, but it has a chance of helping a non-specialist to make the sound if he so wishes, whereas 'Secondary Cardinal Vowel' or 'The high front vowel with lip rounding' would not. If he speaks French or German, of course, the need for the description falls away and he need read no further. For this reason the analogical approximation is in each case given first, with the exception of \[ ø \] where the analogue is of dubious value. The description, where it seems necessary, follows, and the spelling/s last, with examples.

This is clearly not the type of phonetic-equivalents table which can run across the foot of a series of pages and then start again as is the practice of many dictionaries. The symbols, however, are very much simpler than those of the Oxford Dictionary and far less numerous. When a final version of the major Dictionary of SAE appears, however, it may well be deemed desirable that an abbreviated pronunciation key should be printed at the foot of each page as in the Oxford and Webster's Dictionaries, or conceivably a 'ready-reference' table printed inside the back or front cover as in the Webster Dictionaries.

Several non-English vowels have been problem sounds in the matter of description if not of transcription.

1. The description of \[ y \] above has worked in practice on several subjects.

2. The pronunciation symbols listed in the new Supplement A - G of the Oxford English Dictionary (1972) are ninety-seven in number, made up as follows:

   - 30 'ordinary vowels' (containing several diphthongs)
   - 27 'long vowels' (containing several diphthongs)
   - 16 'obscure vowels' (containing one pseudo-diphthong)
   - 24 consonants [+ 11 which 'have their usual English values']

   For any reader, lay or trained, to master these would be no mean assignment.

3. A note before the table of vowels, which reads: 'high', 'low', 'front', 'back', and 'central' refer to the position of the tongue in the mouth' has been added in an attempt to simplify this.
(a) The high short [i] sound as in 'riem' or 'kierie' involves, as do several others, the use of an abbreviating diacritic, since [rim] even in a fairly narrow transcription would signify English 'ream' and in a broad one, English 'rim', neither of which really approximates to riem. As a working diacritic for this purpose I hoped to adopt the sign for the short syllable used in the scansion of metrical feet, [ ^= ], which is a familiar signal of shortness even to school children, since the shortness of these vowels is a very prominent feature.

Printing difficulties, however, make it necessary to adopt a less obvious mark of shortness, in fact the 'breve' of the IPA [^], which is a smaller version of this. It is listed among the diacritics of the IPA to indicate the weaker element in a diphthong, but it is seldom used except by Daniel Jones who himself describes it as rare.

The form used by Daniel Jones has accordingly been adopted as abbreviation diacritic, replacing the dot over the [i] thus [i]. This sound occurs frequently both in stressed and unstressed syllables as in kierie [kierie].

For this sound the description 'short as in German ich or French riz', is given, and a note added to the [i] symbol reads: 'A short form of this [i] sound, very short and slightly lower, is used by most South African speakers for the pronunciation of final 'y' as in city, unlike the [e] of British English in the same position. Where this occurs in the text the symbol [i], is used.'

This oversimplification ignores the fact that the [i] given is a higher vowel than an abbreviated form of [i] for unstressed spellings. Articulatory description of this would add undesirable and perhaps confusing extra wordiness; and the vowel, being unstressed, would unconsciously be produced lower than the stressed form, as can be observed from the relative heights of the vowels in the SAE (not Afrikaans) pronunciation of kierie.

(b) One of the commonest vowels in SAE usually regarded as a stressed schwa or neutral vowel, as in SAE 'milk' [ mIk ], has given considerable trouble in description and in actual transcription practice. The symbol [3] described by George Bernard Shaw as 'the e upside down' presents no problem.

2. This same mark is listed by Webster's Third International Dictionary among its punctuation marks, not in its pronunciation key, labelled 'breve' which is defined in the body of the dictionary: 'breve 2a. a mark placed over a vowel to indicate that the vowel is short b: this mark placed over a syllable or used above to indicate an unstressed or a short syllable in a metric foot.' In view of the 2a definition it is difficult to see why this is not in the pronunciation key. The 2b definition equates it with the scansion mark.
3. Introduction to Pygmalion
Nor does the stressed form of the sound for which \[\text{-}\] has been added to the symbol, thus \[\text{[3]}\], though there is the risk that this might be interpreted as a length mark, as inmetrical feet, for what is invariably a short sound.

It is in the interpretation or reading back of the actual transcriptions in which \[\text{[3]}\] occurs that its inadequacies are shown up, (in that it sounds remarkably 'plat'), and in the description of the stressed form that it becomes well nigh impossible. The usual equivalents given, 'the first syllable of ghead,' 'the second syllable of butter' are unexceptionable for an unstressed vowel. The stressed form, however, might be variously interpreted as the sound in \text{cart} [c], \text{cat} [к], \text{cut} [v] or \text{cart} [3] which is obviously unsatisfactory. For the non-Afrikaans speaking reader 'the sound in Afrikaans \text{sin} [saq], sentence' would not suffice, and one is left with a virtually in-describable sound, said, in any case, among English dialects, to be unique to SAE. The unstressed form is however, regular in Australian English e.g. \text{velvet} [velva], \text{satın} [sætan] \text{1}. I have therefore adopted for the stressed \text{i} spelling (the sound for which is usually regarded as a manifestation of schwa) the symbol \[\text{[J]}\] which relates sound to spelling, looks less strange and unfamiliar and is probably a closer approximation to the pronunciation of most SAE speakers \text{2} than the \[\text{[5]}\], which, though correct for the speaker of Afrikaans, is very 'plat' indeed for one of English: compare Afk \[slam\] SAE \[slm\] and British English \[slm\].

The use of this symbol \[\text{[J]}\] should considerably simplify future transcriptions since it can be applied by the following rule of thumb: 'The \text{i} spelling in stressed syllables should be transcribed by means of the symbol \[\text{[J]}\] unless the \text{i} is initial or in combination with \[g\], \[k\], \[g\], preceded by \[h\] or followed by \[s\] when the symbol \[\text{[J]}\] should be used to distinguish the higher vowel conditioned by back and velar consonants and the glottal fricative.' \text{3} This is in itself an over-simplification. An experiment I conducted on about 120 students at Rhodes University showed that the raising influence of the velar consonants was regressively stronger, especially in unstressed syllables, so that the vowel in \\text{tactic, frantic, plastic} was perceptibly higher than in that in the reversed syllable in \\text{pocket, ticket} and \\text{basket}; similarly the vowel is higher when followed by \[g\] as in \\text{shindig}, than when preceded by it as in \\text{haggis} or \text{ragged}.

1. Sidney J. Baker \text{The Australian Language}
2. J.D. O'Connor in \text{Phonetics} (Penguin Books 1973 Chapter V p. 155-6) states specifically that \[\text{[J]}\] is South African and places it in the high central sector of the vowel chart. (This is somewhat higher and slightly further back than I would personally place it, but in line with \text{Stageberg's description} of the sound quoted on p 34.) He also postulates on the single, shaky contrast of \\text{finish} and \\text{Finnish} an extra phoneme, \[\text{[J]}\], for S. A. E. It seems to me more realistic to regard this sound as an allophone of the \[\text{[J]}\] in fig for the rendering of most \text{i} spellings in stressed syllables by 'Standard', S. A. E speakers, with the possible exception of \text{milk}, and as an allophone of \[a\] in unstressed syllables with the exception of those described above. L. W. Lanham regards all these as manifestations of schwa \[a\].
3. This only holds good for English. It is not valid for Afrikaans \text{i} spellings before back consonants e.g. \text{stinkblaar}, \text{winkel}, \text{PAR}, for which \[\text{[J]}\] is used in their SAE manifestations.
The transcription is thus greatly simplified, but the problem of objective description remains.

Terminology of the 'elocution lesson' type: 'flattened i', 'less brilliant i sound' etc. would clearly be ineligible. An English analogical equivalent, e.g. 'approximately the vowel sound in the second and third syllables of differences' also has disadvantages, as neither of these is a stressed syllable, and the third e is a higher vowel in R.P (A B)1 than the first.

The description in Towards a Dictionary of SAE was 'This sound [i] is pronounced by many SAE speakers in a retracted and centralised form [j]'. This is adequate as far as it goes but omits to make provision for readers to whom phonetic terminology is unknown. A possible 'articulatory' compromise from this might be 'This sound is related to the vowel in pick, but is pronounced with the tongue in a lower position; like the second vowel, in ticket as opposed to the first pronounced stressed.' Again this is a somewhat feeble approximation, especially for South African speakers who, like Australians, tend to use the neutral vowel [a], ['t'kat], in this position. Norman C. Stageberg2 describes the sound as 'high central'3 and remarks 'One way to find the /E/ position is to pronounce the vowel of up and then to raise the tongue toward the roof of the mouth.' This of course somewhat undermines the symbol-to-spelling relationship which is, I think, important to maintain, and which is a primary reason for adopting the barred [i] symbol. He gives as examples of the occurrence of the vowel in the speech of many persons: started, folded, thesis, because, degree, children, roses.4 Unfortunately all these occurrences are, predictably, in unstressed syllables. It is tempting to adopt as analogue 'habit' because of the i spelling or even 'theses', but the sound quality of the vowel in because or degree, on account of the following velar consonants, is probably more consistently comparable with [i], particularly among SAE speakers, and also probably Australians for whom the j of 'habit' might well be rendered as [a].

(c) The vowel of kop, pronk is a description problem. The IPA symbol closest to the sound is [o] which, in the narrower transcription, would represent the vowel of corpse or, in the broad transcription that of cop. Neither of these adequately reflects the sound of kop, so again the closest transcription involves the use of the abbreviating diacritic to counter the length of what is regarded as an inherently long vowel in English.

1. 'Received Pronunciation' (Algemeen Besk aafd)
2. Introductory Readings on Language p 298.
3. for which Lanham and Traill normally use [3], causing inevitable confusion in such a pair as bid [b3d] (IPA [b3d], my system [b3d]), and bird,IPA [b3d].
4. Sanford A. Schane Generative Phonology p. 12 - 13 uses the symbol [i] for the second vowel in roses and describes it as 'High Back Unrounded,' a most difficult and improbable articulatory feat.
In transcription the \( [\circ] \) symbol, abbreviated \( [\text{o}] \), has so far proved quite satisfactory (unlike the long \( [\circ] \) which is not very good for long \( o \) sounds of the African language, e.g. lobola.)

The description of \( [\text{s}] \) in Towards a Dictionary of South African English is inadequate, even analogically, as the vowel used, I am told, in most dialects of German, is far closer to the \( [\text{p}] \) of English kop. An Austrian informant has suggested that the \( o \) of Gott is shorter and a more suitable analogue and this has, with reservations, been adopted for the table. The closest English approximation to it is given in the Shorter Oxford English Dictionary example as 'authority', but this sound could not occur in a stressed syllable in English. Therefore if the first syllable of 'authority', pronounced stressed and without lengthening, is cited as its equivalent, it is necessary to enter a caveat to the effect that the stressing of the sound does not make it qualitatively or quantitatively equivalent to the first syllable of author.

(d) The vowel found in stoep, or in both stressed and unstressed forms in kudu, cannot be regarded as qualitatively equivalent to the English vowel in full in spite of being quantitatively equivalent to it. Its articulation, being higher, makes it qualitatively roughly equivalent with that of fool. The same practice has been adopted for this vowel as for the high front short \( [\text{i}] \), and the standard IPA symbol for \( [u] \), normally long, has been given the abbreviation diacritic, thus making it possible to distinguish between \( [\text{stu}] \) English 'stoop' and \( [\text{stup}] \) Afrikaans 'stoep' which is more consistent with accuracy than the transcription \( [\text{stu}] \) \( ( [\text{u}] \) as in 'full') would be.

This more accurate transcription, however, again creates a problem of description. The Shorter Oxford English Dictionary gives 'untp' and 'frugalit' as examples of the short \( u \) sound, independent of the sound given for 'full' and 'book', as I wish to do here. Again, however, both examples are of a sound occurring in unstressed syllables only, which detracts from their value as analogues.

A possible solution is to suggest 'as in German Hund'. This is not ideal, but the sound in 'frugalit' pronounced stressed by an English speaker would almost certainly become practically indistinguishable from the sound in 'frugal', whereas German Hund given as an analogue would give immediate consciousness of its being a non-English sound.

It is evident that these vital short vowels of SAE - \( [\text{y}] \) as in riem, \( [\text{z}] \) as in biltong, \( [\text{U}] \) as in kop and \( [\text{u}] \) as in stoep, pose a common problem to the phonetician endeavouring to 'tame' them for lexicographical purposes.

Each has the sound quality of what is normally an unstressed vowel in English, which must be produced stressed, without alteration in quality and without lengthening.

This is of course a difficulty for any phonetically untrained person to whom the production of a sound as described above would constitute quite a feat, as well as for the phonetician who wishes to describe and illustrate the sounds without undue wordiness or technicality.

(e) The short stressed vowel in rus for which, following standard Afrikaans phonetic practice, the symbol of Secondary Cardinal Vowel No. 3 [œ] is used, again in a short stressed form, is not easy to describe. For this I considered the simplified solution of using the stressed schwa symbol [ə] as in Afrikaans pit, with the proviso that if the word was spelt with a j the sound should be pronounced with the lips slightly rounded. However, as the lip-rounding in such a pair as Afrikaans pit and put is phonemic, it was clearly ineligible to use the same symbol, so that [œ] used by Meyer de Villiers 1 has been adopted, with the analogue 'as in French boeuf (pronounced short)' and the rough description 'A short semi-low front vowel with slight lip-rounding.'

(f) The sound in kērel seems to be relatively rare and the compromise of using [e] as in pen with a length mark [eː] has been adopted thus: [keːrel], in preference to introducing a symbol [ɛ] as a monophthong distinct from the first element of the diphthong [ɛə], which could be confusing. In this case I think the qualitative compromise can be justified, particularly as 'similar to the first element of the diphthong of air [ɛə]', which would probably be the only analogue suitable, would be an inadequate guide. Meyer de Villiers in his rather broader transcription gives the sound of sa and ver as a lengthened version of the sound in met, which further strengthens the case for the omission of a distinct, separate symbol for this sound. However, many SAE speakers, following the English tendency to diphthongise the Afrikaans pure vowels, pronounce the e of kērel, ver and perske as a diphthong similar to that of care, fair and pear. It will therefore be necessary and desirable to give this simpler and possibly more frequent reading as an alternative.

(g) The low middle vowel of Afrikaans, following standard Afrikaans phonetic practice, has been transcribed [a], perhaps regrettably the symbol for Cardinal Vowel 4 which is low front, and which is also used for the first element in the [ar] and [av] diphthongs. The sound for which this symbol is used varies widely from one speaker

1. Meyer de Villiers, Afrikaanse Klankleer (1965) gives French tout which is not, I think, suitable for our purposes and English put which is valid for Afrikaans speakers, (Afrikaans English [pút]), but not for SAE.
of SAE to another, so that any description can be only the roughest approximation. The first vowel of Afrikaans for example, appears to vary from the extreme of the [A] (as in hut) on the one hand to that of the sound [o] (as in hot) on the other, and it is therefore difficult to limit it satisfactorily in description.

Whether the recording of these two possible extremes in description in the actual table of phonetic symbols is desirable is difficult to decide. However, as such pronunciations as [ran] for 'rand' (virtually equivalent to English 'runt') or [runt] (rhyming with English 'runt') are heard, this precaution has been taken for the present.

The analogues given 'as in German ach, Italian altro and French a la mode' should, however, be reasonably helpful.

The same symbol is used for the low-mid vowel, occurring in the five-vowel system of the African languages as in abakweta [aˈbaːkwətə] for want of a more subtly distinctive transcription which would not, I think, be worth the difficulties involved, particularly for the user of the text.

2.3.3 Diphthongs

Speakers of SAE speaking Afrikaans or using borrowed Afrikaans items in their English have a tendency to regular diphthongisation of sounds which are regarded as pure vowels in Afrikaans.

These sounds; (a) the oo spelling of boom, and the o of dominee, and (b) the ee spelling of geel- and the e spelling of bredie, are therefore transcribed for SAE as diphthongs. The sound transcribed [ø] (Secondary Cardinal Vowel 2) by Meyer de Villiers, spelt normally eu in Afrikaans is a similar case. The SAE speaker invariably diphthongises this with or without lip rounding.

The transcriptions of the diphthongs, largely for the sake of English analogues where possible, are less 'true' to the original sounds than they might be.

For diphthongs spelt ee, e, therefore, the formula 'as in pier' has been avoided, in the interests of caution and 'similar to the sound in pier' used instead. In the same way, 'similar to the sound in poor' has been used for diphthongs spelled oo, o. Both these sounds could be more accurately transcribed with a higher vowel as the first
element, [iə] and [uə], but as these are without convenient analogues 1 [iə] and [uə] are used, and this shortcoming noted in the table.

(c) For the diphthong for the Afrikaans ou spellings the English [ʌv] favoured by Gimson is used, not the [œu] of Meyer de Villiers. The older transcription [ou] favoured by Ida Waro and by Daniel Jones, though close to the pronunciation of most American English, is remote from SAE which often tends towards the dialectal form [ʌu] and in extreme cases to the monophthongisation [ʌ:].

(d) The diphthong in huis and all ui spellings is conveniently transcribed by a digraph similar in spelling to the analogue given: that is [œi] 'as in French coup d'œil'. The [œi] transcription of Meyer de Villiers which shows a lip-rounded final element to the diphthong is, I think, not consistent with SAE pronunciation. This sound, being a regular pronunciation problem even to English speaking South Africans, is given as well as the analogue, a brief articulatory description: 'like the sound in English day pronounced with lip rounding', which, if exactly followed would in fact achieve something approaching the [œi] sound. The tendency however in SAE speakers to pronounce this sound as if it were the diphthong of sail could make it necessary to offer the alternative pronunciation [œi] in cases of the ui spelling, undesirable as this would appear. Thus harpuisbos would have to be transcribed [ha(r)poêsəs], and many other items would appear equally messy and confusing. Accordingly a note describing the alternative practice has been added to the table and the alternative, though a frequent pronunciation even among some speakers of Afrikaans, omitted from the transcription.

(e) The SAE speaker's diphthong, spelt in Afrikaans eu, transcribed by Meyer de Villiers [œ], Secondary Cardinal Vowel 2, has been treated as the obverse of the [œi] diphthong and transcribed accordingly as [œ] in such words as keurboom, arikreukel, deurmekaar and verneuk. The analogue 'as in French monsieur' and the description 'the previous diphthong in reverse, or the sound of ear pronounced with slight lip rounding' are given in the table. This sound is of course, like the previous one, very frequently pronounced by SAE speakers without lip rounding as an almost exact equivalent of the ear diphthong as in [ˈkərə(r), buə]. It seems of

1. Daniel Jones gives happier and influence, both diphthongs occurring in unstressed syllables.
dubious value, however, to offer [tə] as an alternative (as in the case of [œt] and [øɔ]) and a note similar to that for (d) appears in the table.

2.3.4 Vowels and diphthongs modified by -tjie and -djie

Certain sounds appear to undergo mutation before the diminutive suffix -tjie or -djie, particularly if the suffix occurs without an intervening consonant, though this is not invariable. For example the long aa of naartjie and sewejaartjie remains unchanged, whereas that of rooibaadjie does not. On the other hand short -ie [Y] of kiewietjie, oblietjie and wag-'n-bietjie without any intervening consonant, appears not to be influenced by the suffix.

Other a and aa spellings, however, as in matjies, latjie, vaatjie, karbonaadjie, rooibaadjie and babiaantjie require to be transcribed by the [a:] symbol described as being similar to the sound in pie, which is the closest available approximation in spite of the slight difference in length even for the SAE speaker.

The e spellings appear to represent a higher sound than in most other contexts and are therefore transcribed by using the short [Y] as in rjem in the words kenmetjie, kommetjie, middelmanetjie, mosbolletjie, ribbetjie. In the words in which the e spelling carries stress, however, such as tammeletjie, the [e] symbol (as in pen) has been retained.

The oo and oe spellings seem to be affected in sousboontjie and kalkoentjie, even across the intervening n (as with babiaantjie) and the sound in vaatjie-vaatjie, pens-en-pootjies is similarly affected without it. These few examples cannot be transcribed by any available sound symbol on the existing pronunciation key.

The problem then arises of whether to increase the number of symbols by one for the sake of relatively few items, and to add [ur] to the list of diphthongs, or whether to use [uə] or better [ʌə] to be interpreted as the reader chooses. The alternative [ɔ:] as in ploy' is, I think, too wide of the mark to be considered.

Even if the diphthong [iə] or [ɛə] were added, and marked 'rare in SAE' the question of an analogue would still arise. The sound in French 'oui' is not correct, as, being a semi-vowel glide, the second element is the stronger, and the common American dialect pronunciation of buoy [ui] is not generally enough known to be of value here.
No pronunciation key so far consulted gives a diphthong anything like this (except Daniel Jones's Pronouncing Dictionary where [ui] is given, as a variant only, for the pronunciation of ruin); and the pronunciation of buoy in the American Heritage Dictionary is given as boo'e (apparently a disyllable having the sound of boot and of be in terms of the key provided.) Meyer de Villiers describes his symbol [ui] as one of those 'tekens wat nie internasionaal bepaal is nie.'

Daniel Jones however gives as English diphthong No. 24 [ui] (broad transcription) which could be rendered in the narrow [uə]. In the examples he gives, valuing, issuing, casuist and ruination, the sound is in every case in a syllable carrying secondary stress (which would not fit, for example, kalkoentjie.) Ruination would otherwise serve well as an analogue, even though there would probably be a tendency to produce the first element as longer and higher than necessary, as in ruin, and the second lower than it in fact is. He says further 'It is always replaceable by the disyllabic sequence u-i which is difficult to distinguish from it.' On the principles of 'entia non sunt multiplicanda' therefore, the sequence [uə] which is, I think, closer than [uə], is being used, to be interpreted by the reader as he chooses for these cases, and for the spelling oei as in foeitog, as either would be likely to be a fairly satisfactory approximation to the correct sound.

The pronunciation table evolved for the final text follows:

1. Abercrombie (Elements of General Phonetics, 1967, p. 60) remarks that 'A sequence of two vowels which occupy two syllables, as in gnawing or ruin is not a diphthong'.


PRONUNCIATION KEY

TABLE OF PHONETIC SYMBOLS

Approximate sound values of symbols for South African English

CONSONANTS

[p, b, t, d, g, k, f, v, s, z, h, m, n, l] have their usual agreed English speech value.

Non-English sounds are marked *

[r] like normal English initial r as in rat. This r in initial position
is rolled as in Scottish English by some SAE speakers.

*(r) the parentheses indicate that some speakers omit this sound
altogether. This (r) when sounded is rolled as in Scottish English or Afrikaans by some SAE speakers, e.g. poort [pvœ(r)t].

[j] as in ring

dʒ as in judge

tʃ as in church. This is a frequent SAE pronunciation of *[c], the
palatal plosive. (see below)

*[c] this sound is rare for SAE speakers who usually pronounce it as
[ts] (see above) or [k]. [In Afrikaans it is spelt tj or dj and
sounds like a [k] produced forward on the hard palate e.g. naartjie
[narʃə].]

θ as in thin, pith

*θ as in then, tithe

ʃ as in shine, finish

ʒ as in pleasure

j as in yellow. The Afrikaans spelling is j e.g. ja = yes.

*ŋ as in Scottish loch, German ach. The Afrikaans spelling is ��이 or
гг e.g. gogga = insect.

*ɔ as in Welsh Llandudno: found in African language borrowings
spelt hl e.g. hlolipa = reverence, kahle = well, also in all Zulu
place names containing this combination e.g. Hluhluwe, Mahlabatini,
only erroneously pronounced [ʃl] as in German schloss.

Note: In words borrowed from the African languages the c, x and
Sall spellings represent clicks of three different basic types.

< represents the dental click formed behind the teeth on the teeth ridge, rather like the English 'dismay sound' variously spelt tut-tut, tch tch, tak tsk.

x or xx represents the lateral click, formed at the side of the mouth, and

g the palatal click formed at the hard palate. Approximations are not available for these.

In the interests of simplicity, therefore, they are all transcribed as [k] sounds, a quite usual way of rendering them.

The presence of a click in a word is indicated by [+]

following the transcription thus:

Tixo ['tikɔ +]

**VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS**

Vowels or diphthongs which have no English equivalent are marked *. The example and/or description following each is the nearest approximation to the sound.

Note: 'high', 'low', 'front', 'back' and 'central' refer to the position of the tongue in the mouth.

**VOWELS**

*Y as in French rue, German über. This is pronounced like the sound in pea but with closely rounded lips. The Afrikaans spelling is uu e.g. suurveld = sour grass veld, occ. u e.g. suiring = sorrel.

i as in pea.

Note: A form of this sound, very short and slightly lower, is used by most SAE speakers for the pronunciation of final y as in city, unlike the [i] of British English in the same position. Where this occurs in the text the symbol [i'] is used.

*F short as in German ich, French riz. The Afrikaans spelling is usually ie as in riem = thong, occ e before tj e.g. ribbetjie = rib chop.

* as in pick.

Note: Unless it is initial or in combination with [g], [k] or [ŋ], preceded by [k] or followed by [ʃ], when the symbol [i] is used, this sound is pronounced in a lower form, further back, see [f] below.

* Similar to the sound in because, degree pronounced stressed. This is only an approximation: see note on [i] above. The [i] symbol is used for i spellings other than the combinations described there, and for the SAE rendering of Afrikaans i spellings, rendered [ai] by Afrikaans speakers and some speakers of SAE.
\begin{itemize}
\item $e$ as in \textit{pen}
\item *e* as in French \textit{mère}, German \textit{ähnlich}, the [e] sound pronounced long. The Afrikaans spelling is either \textit{a} as in \textit{sa} = say or \textit{kærel} = fellow, \textit{e} before \textit{r} as in \textit{ver} = far, \textit{oë} as in \textit{nø} = not so? See also diphthong [\textit{"et}] p ë ë.
\item $\textit{æ}$ as in \textit{pan}
\item *a* short as in German \textit{ach}, Italian \textit{alto}, French \textit{à la mode}. This sound occurs with many variations in both Afrikaans and the African languages which contribute to SAE, spelt \textit{a}. This description is only an approximation since the variants are between the extremes of the [\textit{ʌ}] of \textit{but}, on the one hand and the [\textit{u}] of \textit{hot} on the other.
\item $\textit{a}$ as in \textit{par}, \textit{palm}, used in this text for most Afrikaans '\textit{aa}' spellings and for some \textit{a} spellings.
\item $\textit{p}$ as in \textit{on}, \textit{sock}.
\item $\textit{o}$ as in \textit{corn}, \textit{call}. This symbol is also used to transcribe long 'o' sounds in words borrowed from African languages e.g. \textit{lobpla} = bride price.
\item *$\textit{ʊ}$* Similar to [\textit{a}] but short and pronounced stressed, something like the \textit{o} in German \textit{Gott}. The quality and duration of the sound are equivalent to that of the first syllable of \textit{authority}, pronounced stressed. [This does not make it equivalent in quality or duration to the first syllable of \textit{author}.] The Afrikaans spelling is \textit{o} as in \textit{koppie} = hillock.
\item $\textit{u}$ as in \textit{book}, \textit{pull}
\item $\textit{u}$ as in \textit{boot}, \textit{rule}
\item *$\textit{ʊ}$* as in German \textit{Hund}. Similar to the sound in \textit{boot}, but pronounced short. Spellings are \textit{oo} as in Afrikaans \textit{stoep} = open veranda, and \textit{u} as in \textit{kudu} (Afrikaans \textit{koedoe}) in both stressed and unstressed syllables.
\item $\textit{ø}$ as in \textit{butter}, \textit{about}. The unstressed central 'neutral' vowel.
\end{itemize}
*ə* the same vowel stressed, a sound said to be unique to SAE. It is standard in Afrikaans e.g. *sin*[sɪn] = sentence. Some SAE speakers and most Afrikaans speakers use this sound for *i* spellings e.g. *pit*[pɪt] Afrikaans 'stone', 'pip', for which the symbol [ɪ] is used in this text.

*oe* as in French *boeuf* (pronounced short). A short semi-low front vowel with slight lip rounding. The Afrikaans spelling is *u* as in *-rus*[ -ro:s] = rest.

3 as in *pert, burn, bird, earth*

*a* as in *but*

**DIPHTHONGS**

Note: In the interests of simplicity and convenience the closest English diphthong has been taken as an example wherever possible.

*ɪə* similar to the sound in *pier*. Afrikaans spellings *ee* as in *geel* = yellow, and *e* as in *brie̞die* = stew, hotpot, are rendered as a diphthong by SAE speakers, though not always before *f*. [*These are pure vowels, not diphthongs, for Afrikaans speakers.*]

*ʊə* similar to the sound in *poor*. Afrikaans spellings *oo* as in *boom* = tree and *o* as in *dominee* = minister are rendered as a diphthong by SAE speakers though not always before *f*. See *i* above.

Note: These two diphthongs could more accurately be given with their first elements [ɪ] and [ʊ] respectively. However, since [ɪə] as in *beer, fear, pier* and [ʊə] as in *poor, sure*, are regular English diphthongs they are given as more convenient approximations to the SAE sounds.

*ɛə* as in *pair, pear*. This is also a frequent pronunciation of the Afrikaans long *e* before *r* as in *kœrel, ver*, *perske*. See [ɛː] p43.

*ɛɪ* as in *pay*. The Afrikaans spelling is *y* as in *vry* = court *ei* as *eina* = ouch!

*æ* as in *pie*, but of slightly longer duration. The Afrikaans spelling is *aa̞i* as in *braai* = grill, or *ai* as in *assegai* = spear.

*Note:* Before *-tj* or *-dj* *aa* and *a* spellings are pronounced [ar] e.g. *vaatje* = a small barrel (vat), *rooibaadjie* = redcoat, *latjie* = twig.

*ɔː* as in *ploy, coin*. Like the [aː] sound this tends to be slightly lengthened.
\( au \) as in \( toe, coal \). This is an approximation to the sound of the Afrikaans \( ou \) spellings as in \( juffrou = \) mistress (teacher).

\( au \) as in \( prow \)

\( *\text{oe} \) as in French coup d'\text{œil}. This sound is similar to that of English \( day \) pronounced with rounded lips. The Afrikaans spelling is \( \text{ui} \), e.g. \( \text{muisvoel} = \) mousebird (occasionally \( \text{uv} \) in proper names e.g. \( \text{Uys} \), or in Dutch borrowings.) This is often pronounced \([\text{ey}]\) as in \( \text{pay} \) by SAE speakers.

\( \#\text{oe} \) as in French mons\text{ieur}: the obverse of the \( [\text{œ}] \) diphthong, pronounced like the sound of \( \text{ear} \) with lip rounding. For Afrikaans speakers this is a pure vowel spelt \( \text{eu} \) as in \( \text{deurmekaar} = \) muddled, \( \text{verneuk} = \) deceive.

\text{Note}: This is often pronounced \([\text{xø}]\) as in \( \text{fare} \) by SAE speakers.

\text{OTHER MARKERS}

: placed after a vowel indicates that it is of exceptional length.

\( ^\circ \) above a symbol indicates that the sound is short.

\( () \) indicates that the sound within the parentheses is frequently dispensed with or dropped.

\( [\text{m}] [\text{n}] \) or \( [\text{l}] \) indicates that the consonant is syllabic i.e. it serves as vowel and consonant in one, e.g. \( \text{bat\( \text{f} \)} \) (button), \( \text{litt\( \text{l} \)} \) (little).

\( / \) placed below a resonant consonant \( [\text{m}] \) \( [\text{n}] \) or \( [\text{l}] \) indicates that the consonant is syllabic i.e. it serves as vowel and consonant in one, e.g. \( [\text{bask\( \text{t} \)]} \) [kr\( \text{s}\text{'aen\$am\$am} \).

\( / \) placed before a syllable indicates that it carries the primary stress or emphasis in that word, e.g. \( [\text{'bo\( \text{sk\( \text{t} \)]}\text{'}kr\text{\$s\text{'aen\$am\$am} \).

\( / \) placed before a syllable indicates that it carries secondary stress in that word e.g. \( [\text{'hænd\text{'beeg}] \) [\text{'keeb\text{id\$lif}] \).

Where alternative pronunciations of single syllables occur the alternative is given for the syllable only.

For final syllables the alternative follows a comma and a hyphen thus \([ (\text{z})\text{'d\text{zb\$} -\text{a}]\): for initial syllables it follows a comma and precedes a hyphen thus \([ (\text{z})\text{'f\text{\$r\text{w\$}} ,\text{\$e\$f-}]\): for medial syllables it follows a comma and is placed between two hyphens, thus \([\text{af\text{\$k\text{\$n\$d\$r\$}}} ,\text{\text{\$\text{\$e\$nd--}} ,\text{\text{\$\text{\$d\$nd--}]\).
2.5 Pronunciation spellings

Pronunciation spellings do occur unconsciously in the writing of South Africans. The following instances are from students' essays and occasionally newspapers, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Correct Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a (for an)</td>
<td>exclude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjective</td>
<td>fact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calvanist</td>
<td>furniture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calvanistic</td>
<td>he's (for 'his')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>congruant</td>
<td>Std. VI pupil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>continuity</td>
<td>hearily (yearly)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>definite</td>
<td>incompatable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>definate</td>
<td>interect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>despute</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distinguish</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devided</td>
<td>inveriable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following spellings illustrate the loss of the unstressed vowel common in speech literary, different, cordroy, auxiliary, billery, syntacticly. Conversely the inability of many South Africans to produce the sequence [lm] without an intervening vowel is sometimes satirised with the spelling fillum.

2.6 References

These appear in greater detail in Section II of the Bibliography.


Principles of the International Phonetic Association, University College (Reprint 1965).

Pronunciation Keys Consulted:


The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language 1969


The Shorter Oxford English Dictionary.

Chamber's Twentieth Century Dictionary.

Mitford Mathews, Dictionary of Americanisms.

University of Victoria, Dictionary of Canadianisms.

Cassidy and Lepage, Dictionary of Jamaican English.

English Usage in South Africa, University of South Africa 1970-73.
CHAPTER III

The Treatment of Dialect Grammar for Purposes of Lexicography

3.1

It has been remarked elsewhere that a dictionary of a dialect will be doing only part of its job if the treatment of the syntactic peculiarities of that dialect is avoided or overlooked. Audrey Duckert underlines the fact that this side of lexicography is both difficult and neglected in her comment in reply to a question about what was being done in dialectology about variations in syntax: 'At the moment the workers in the vineyards of dialectology have their hands more than full with gathering and interpreting data on pronunciation and lexicon. What syntactical matter we are able to get comes to us on tapes and through fieldworkers' observations. Simply put, no one has yet been able to devise a workable questionnaire for gathering syntactic data'. It is, I think, generally agreed that syntax operates at a deeper linguistic level than vocabulary or phonology, with, possibly, the rider that it is in structures rather than in words or sounds that changes are slower or less likely to take place in the evolution of any natural language. That although any language is inevitably dynamic, its grammar or syntactic structure is its most stable aspect.

The same must be true of a dialect of a language. American and South African English differ quite radically in accent and vocabulary, carrying those surface hall-marks for all to see or hear, whereas their deviations from the standard norm in grammar are less obvious and require far greater linguistic subtlety or sophistication to recognise. Nevertheless these deviations exist and constitute an inescapable facet of dialect study, and a major one, in spite of the fact that they are comparatively few and infrequent beside differences of the other two types, and quite as tough an assignment to describe as is the sound system.

In a way it is tougher: posing as it does the difficult question of treatment of grammatical manifestations for lexicographical purposes. There are various ways of doing this, none of which has so far proved wholly satisfactory. Descriptions of syntactic deviances in themselves are not easy without extensive illustrative examples for which there is

1. Lexicography in English (See McDavid and Duckert), p. 67.
no space; but worse than the matter of clarity in description is the problem of deciding, 'what to call the entry', and the fact that they are mostly phenomena of the spoken word.

Most of the more subtle marks of the South African English dialect, unlike what one might term the 'top dressing' of names for things, are apt to be written on the air, as are the sounds of the language, and therefore disregarded. Efforts have been made however to represent the sounds of SAE by means of what Abercrombie calls 'indexical' spelling using the ordinary alphabet. One notable example is the grotesque Ah Big Yaws? of Robin Malan, based on the Strine series (described recently to me by a sensitive and intelligent Australian as 'sick') by Afferbeck Lauder. Another with serious intent, similar to that of Adam Small in Afrikaans in some of his work, is the nonce spelling developed by Sidney Clouts in his 'Hotknife' poems. One of considerable interest to the dialectologist has presumably that intention cited by Horace in the Ars Poetica 'aut prodesse ... aut delectare: ... ', namely 'Backchat' by Blossom Broadbeam in the magazine Darling. This is a remarkably lighthearted feature, but not only is there an ingenious and recognisable spelling system, there is also evidence of acute awareness of both current colloquial vocabulary and of grammatical usage of a kind seldom seen in print. In the text of the dictionary, therefore, this feature has been extensively used in illustrations of items found in the lists at 3.3, namely the translations from Category 10, and the word class lists which form Category 29. In this Chapter the Darling quotations are of course satirical comment as opposed to genuine material of the corpus summarised in 3.2.

Some of the most characteristic and frequent grammatical manifestations of dialect cannot be historically traced or validated, because these are rare in written texts, though some do come to light by pure accident, particularly in some of the 1820 Settler material: Jeremiah Goldswain for instance was bisey talking according to his own Chronicle; James Hancock records a dialogue in his notebook 'was he at the shooting match by your place?'; James Collett reports 1842 25 March 'Tiger got under my wethers and killed 8 or 9', and 1839 23 Dec. 'frightful sickness under my

1. Elements of General Phonetics, Chapter I.
flocks', and Ethel Emslie that Uncle Jesse was 'ploughing in far lands', a function shift of the adverb to the adjective reminiscent of the English of the Bible still heard in South African speech today where a far way and a far place are in frequent use.

These features which are less obviously 'dialectal' than the borrowed vocabulary or the relatively superficial features of pronunciation, are really more deeply so, being, as has been suggested already, at an altogether different level of consciousness. Material at this level is particularly difficult to represent in lexicographically conventional terms.

The syntax of SAE has two clearly marked if not always classifiable contrasting characteristics which are possibly factors in the grammar of many English dialects - namely the tendencies to redundancies and to short cuts, both of which are clearly observable in American English as well.

These two primary categories of the syntax of this dialect obviously subsume usages of many kinds, and each within itself has dialect features which appear to originate with native speakers, and structures which are translated from those of Afrikaans and of the African languages. Where the question of translated structures occurs it is of course not infrequent that vocabulary is influenced along with the grammar.

It is therefore difficult to draw a hard and fast line between syntax and phonology, and syntax and vocabulary, and some of the 'non-lexical' material appears to inhabit a kind of limbo of language, not belonging to either. 1

Predictably the dialect syntax of SAE is more clearly observable in usage of word classes (parts of speech) other than the nouns, though there are nominalizations of the short-cut type regularly noticeable, such as 'I've been to three twenty firsts in the last month.'

1. Madeleine Mathiot in Grammatical Problems in Lexicography confirms the usual attitude of total separation or non-integration of the syntax with the lexicon exhibiting too, perhaps, muddled thinking in her use of the term 'form' ... 'American linguists of the present and recent past hold in common some basic notions regarding the nature of the lexicon and its relation to the grammar. In both traditions the lexicon is regarded as the inventory of the elementary meaningful forms of the language while the grammar consists of the set of rules accounting for the make-up and combination of these forms. From these notions follows the practice of associating the investigation of meaning exclusively with the lexicon and that of form exclusively with the grammar.' Lexicography in English (see McDavid and Duckett) p. 39.
Material. The corpus of, for the most part, oral usages on which these tentative syntactic conclusions about SAE are based have been collected over seven years. The main source of dialect grammar is obviously the speakers of the dialect themselves, and oral samples from people in all walks of life have been noted. Some are those overheard in the street or in shops, telephone conversations with widely varying people, children overheard at play, students on the campus, and the remarks of the learned professors themselves. Obviously it has not been possible to write down all the possible samples though I have a fair corpus of such material on file.

There are of course written sources other than those mentioned above. The grammar of SAE is frequently noticeable in print and newspapers, magazines in both text and advertising copy, and in books, both novels and plays. Written sources are more likely to contain vocabulary items than examples of dialect syntax, but the number of examples, from sources where there is not any intentional play on dialect, is surprising, consisting as it does of particles omitted or inserted, suffixes lost or found, and manifestations which are far removed from 'words' to be given the standard lexicographical treatment. Many of these in SAE are further complicated by being translations or transliterations of structures rather than terms. If, however, one wishes to give a faithful, or fairly faithful overall picture of the dialect, the grammatical items or function words and the syntactic structures cannot be neglected, and it is a major problem for the lexicographer as it is with the sound system, to 'tame' such apparently recalcitrant material into a form manageable - and acceptable - in a dictionary.

The fact that the text is a categorised one has made it possible to indicate (by the number 29) any non-noun in the case of verbs, adjectives and adverbs and to make 'function words' and other such items as 29prep. for prepositions, 29pron. for pronouns and pseudo-pronouns, and 29red. for redundancies. The material intractable for the purposes of the lexicographer is that which is not there, and it has been necessary to write a section (also numbered 29) with omissions as headword and to list beneath it, with examples, some of those bits and pieces of language lost 'by the wayside' in the speech and writing of many South Africans, based on the corpus referred to above.

In the case of such a word as have used redundantly (if we hadn't have known) or reduced in spelling (that must of been the worst part) it has been possible to use have as a headword;

1. 'If F... had of been there I could of asked him', Darling, 25.6.75
similarly in the case of *little* (he was a small little fellow). The frequently omitted alveolar suffix appears under *omissions*, but has an independant entry *-ed* (3 bedroom house, barb wire, old-fashion home, pickle onion flavour).

Many of the translated structural items fall rather between two stools. Translated, or in most cases transliterated, prepositions (*by, under, for* etc.) appear as headwords in their own right with illustrations of their use, but they are also listed for the sake of completeness and for reference under the somewhat unorthodox headword *prepositions*. Inevitably too, translated structures give rise to such anomalous-sounding entries as *adjective with infinitive* (the tree is capable to withstand frost), and third person form of address, another highly characteristic example of a manifestation for which I am unable to devise a more lexicographically elegant title, but which must obviously have a place in a text which purports, and at any rate attempts to treat the dialect as a whole.

Translated structural expressions, which could be regarded possibly as 'vocabulary' items as well, are marked in the text, 10 (Category 10 Expressions, Idiom and Slang). Redundancies such as *busy* (I looked out of the window and the accused was busy cutting Wynand's throat), *little* cited above, *articles* (a half an hour, 'shall I bring the karos from the Baas's bed') appear as headwords, but are assembled for reference, as are the *omissions* and the *prepositions* under the 'headword’ redundancies.

This, it must be stressed, is only one way of treating this material, and though it could not be regarded as being in any way in line with standard practice, it has the virtues of relative consistency and completeness consonant with keeping the manifestations of the dialect all within one body of text in spite of anomalies and inelegancies of the type mentioned above. Alternative measures are either to omit it, or to deal with it in an entirely separate section of the text in what might be termed a 'non-lexicon'. This latter measure would, by the very nature of the material, involve a degree of repetition since it is virtually impossible to draw a hard and fast line between the syntactic and the lexical. There is, in this text, a section solely devoted to the grammatical material to be found in the Categorised Survey which is modified for convenience as a type of appendix to this section. This, however, merely lists and classifies the material which appears in the main A - Z lexicon, from which I do not feel one would be justified in separating it, in the light of its general importance in both speech and writing.

1. Chapter IV 4.2
2. Chapter IV 4.2 Section 29
3. Chapter III 3.3
3.2 Summary of Grammatical Corpus

Here follows a tentative analysis and summary of the various classes of syntactic deviance based on the corpus of grammatical data assembled, under the headings 3.2.1. Short Cuts and 'Borderline Short Cuts,' 3.2.2. Redundancies, 3.2.3. Translated Structures, including 'Formule'

It must again be stressed that this is only one way of classifying the material, and that there must obviously be a great deal of overlap between the first two and the third, since many of the short cuts and redundancies may be traced back to translations of various types. 3.2.1 and 3.2.2 however serve to separate to a certain extent what might be regarded as opposing forces in the grammar of the dialect speaker, the tendency to reduce and the tendency to amplify in the structures used. Some of the examples which are cited here are quoted in the text of the dictionary, though in some cases written sources showing the same phenomena have come to light since the corpus on which this is based was collected, and have, in preference, been used as illustrations.

3.2.1 Short Cuts and Omissions.

For actual omissions see p323-40f the dictionary and also 3.3.5 list 9.

1. Function Shift.

(a) Nominalisation of modifiers with resultant loss of nouns.

Come to my twenty first A. Is yours an automatic A ?
The plains A is mostly mohair and wool. Tailor, Cape Town (showing a plural marker on the nominalised modifier).
Sale. Vauxhall Viva with roadworthy A. Advt. 15.9.75. Do you go to ballroom A ? (dancing) Schoolgirl.

(b) Conversion of mode of address to proper noun.

Doctor is coming soon.
Ask uncle.
Sir said I could. (child)

(c) Conversion of proper noun modifier to head of noun phrase, possibly as a common noun.

He says he wants his Christmas A .
There's someone at the back door asking for New Year A .

(d) The use of a noun for the adjectival form.

Holland style, Holland beef steak, Holland coat. This is probably a transliteration of Afrikaans Hollands, or perhaps to avoid the confusion of 'Dutch' with Duits ; though a similar phenomenon is noticeable in the phrase 'Jew boy.'

One might compare here the now probably obsolete British use of 'Hollands' meaning Dutch gin.

(e) Adjective for Adverb.

See 3.3.5 list 4.

This usage occurs regularly with adjectives borrowed from
Afrikaans which does not have differentiated forms for the adverbial, e.g. to swim kaal, walk around haasbek, the fish bite skelm, to look skeef at someone, all of which for English are adverbs of manner. Though the first two could with some verbs be taken to be adjectival subject complements rather than adverbs of manner, as in the English 'He remained calm'. Occasionally the same phenomenon occurs with an English adjective as in It's a far place, a far way to go alone, an overseas trip, overseas interference and in such substandard usage as

Mind you do it good. She plays nice.

though the converse will be found at Redundancies 3.2.2

My new bike goes mooily. (Redundancies 3)

(f) Substitution of noun phrase a person for indefinite pronouns one (1st person or 2nd person) and someone or somebody (3rd person).

This phenomenon, translation of in mensis is exemplified at Translated Structures 3.2.3 No. 10.

(g) The use of brand names, Proper nouns, as generic terms could also be regarded as a type of function shift.

Vim = scouring powder
Nugget = shoe polish
Hoover = vacuum cleaner (also found as verb 'to Hoover the carpet,')
Aspro = any type of aspirin, though 'Disprin' is becoming a rival here.

2. Omission of the article or other determiner especially in prepositional phrases (adverbials) or other noun phrases resulting in a carry-over of what might be termed a + generic feature to simple common nouns. This is frequently found in speech and writing:

He walks to the office.
They're back from the holiday.
They're on the honeymoon.
They're at the bioscope.
Let's go to the flick.
Do you play the piano
Learn to play the guitar in two weeks (Advt.)

3. Omission of Particles This is possibly comparable with the standard American usage out the door, out the window etc. but occurs usually in the speech of children or in substandard usage:

1. See note on these at 3.3.1, (4) p 74.
Be careful of your feet. (of)
I'd laugh, he fell off. (if)
I wouldn't mind, that stove was mine. (if)
[Come, look here (and): also comparable with American English]

4. Omission of inflections. This is basically a substandard practice.
   (i) The third person singular present inflection (the agreement morpheme).
       He always come when we('re) not expecting him.
       David drink too much.
       My wife play the piano.
       What, that got to do with it?
   (ii) The possessive suffix:
       We beat the Oudtshoorn Women Club three-nil.
       He wants a month supply.

5. Simplification of negative structures by the use of never (possibly from Afrikaans nooit used in emphatic denial.)
   (i) As a substitute for didn't.
       The cluster: tense + do + negative + verb.
       e.g. past + do + negative + see → didn't see him
       is frequently rendered as
       never + tense + verb
       never + past + see → never saw him
   (ii) Among children never is heard either as the above or as a coded pro-predicate, such interchanges as the following are common:
       Look what you've done!
       I never did it.
       You did.
       I never.
       You did, I never ... etc.
       In neither instance can never be said to carry its standard meaning of not ever. Thus:
       'I always knew he was no good but I never told him'
       where 'I didn't ever tell him' could well be substituted.
       In SAE never is regularly used to refer to a specific occasion:
       'Sorry Ma, I never saw you'.
       or the instance quoted in the dictionary:
       ... says he was interested in closing the door and
       as he went to it he never observed Col. — at the door.
       Daily Dispatch 16.8.72.

   There are numerous short cuts used in verb structures in SAE in addition to those of the negative cited at 5. above. These are for
convenience numbered, though there are instances where these may be seen to overlap, for example (i) with (v).

(i) Transitive verbs used intransitively.

Did they send _ yet (for 'Have they sent X yet?')
They're (re) coming to fetch _ just now.
Have B's delivered _? [cf. slogan 'We call and Deliver']
I've been learning _ since six o'clock. Schoolgirl.
Before I left ... I had learnt that Jane and Hago had divorced recently Fair Lady ll. 6. 75
A. I was looking for some shoes in town.
B. And did you find _? (see also (v))
I posted (planted) (ploughed) last week. (see also (v))

(ii) Omission of complement noun or pronoun is probably related to (i) and (v).

I've come to wish you _
They come from East London now that we can't get _ from Port Elizabeth any more.
I don't know if we still have _, but I'll look. (see also (v)).

(iii) Reduction of phrasal verbs to single transitive verbs resulting in such usages as:

Granny didn't reply _ me. (child)
Who lectures _ you? (University Teacher).
It is no good lecturing _ and moralising _ them. (Newspaper Article).
Why didn't you explain _ me? (child).
They'll moan _ us for wearing our blazers. (schoolboy).
The explain _ me usage can give rise to a peculiarly jumbled form of the predicate pattern involving both direct and indirect objects:

Vivienne explains me the assignment, then I write it. (Student)

S _ V IO DO

cf. Vivienne gives me the assignment, then I write it.

(iv) The Intransitive use of a reflexive verb:

Even you can transform _ with Blush-On (Advt.)


I have adopted the above term to describe the phenomenon by which, normally in conversation (I have not encountered this in writing) the second speaker omits the object or complement of the verb in his sentence, normally a pronoun, which would code for the noun used by the previous speaker.

Examples of this are indicated at (i) and (iii).

In conversation such interchanges are regularly heard
A. Would you like some more cool drink?
B. No thanks I still have \[\wedge\] .

A. Can I pour you another cup?
B. Yes please if you've still got \[\wedge\] .
or

Where is the soda, have we still got \[\wedge\] ?
The context need not however be a verbal one. 'Have you had?' and 'Do you want?' may occur as actual offers of food and drink to which the reply may be as above: 'No, I still have thanks', or 'Yes please, if there still is \[\wedge\] .

(vi) Confusion of infinitives or other non-finite structures with -ing forms of verbs occurs usually among children, and may be perhaps compared with the adjective with infinitive structure (I'm lazy to get up) mentioned in 3.1 p. 51.

We're not allowed reading comics [to read]
They're not allowed putting sugar in their tea [to put]
He's not competent managing that business [to manage]
Like a reformed alcoholic, if I wish to remain an ex-smoker I dare not touching another cigarette as long as I live [touch], E. P. Herald, 19.7.75
Bags I having a seat [have]

cf. The tree is capable to withstand frost

(vii) The omission of aspectual have in the have + participle structure showing perfective aspect, which is more typical of American than South African English, is also found, but more probably as a substandard use as in the quotation below, or as a result of the influence of American writing or comic strips.

'You[have] just asked me that question ... We[have] all got to die sometime.'

A Winter Vacation D. A. C. Maclennan

[The usage of Dagwood, Hagar, Beetle Bailey and their fellows showing such phenomena as

You \[\wedge\] just invented a new weapon.
Dagwood, Mr Dithers \[\wedge\] just called.
What happened? (for 'What's happened?')
cannot be regarded as truly South African and has therefore not been included in the entry omissions, 323-4 of the text mentioned in 3.1 though this short cut is undoubtedly used by many speakers.]
'Borderline' Short Cuts

I call these 'borderline' since they appear to be at any rate partially phonological manifestations which by short-cutting do have syntactic consequences.

1. In speech primarily, but also in some writing, it is noticeable that the reduced are 're [ə] ending is dropped following pronouns which are open syllables. This is a pervasive tendency heard regularly even among educated speakers over the air.

   You\_ looking tired.
   They\_ coming next week.
   'We\_ jis discussing the common household fly.' Darling
   They\_ in and out all blerry day, man. Ibid, 25.6.75.

This does not appear to be a straightforward phonological manifestation, however, since we're [wiə] would not become [wi:] with the loss of the schwa ending. Similarly they're [ðiə] would not become [ðei] or you're [jʊə], [ju].

2. The loss of the alveolar suffix -ed, -d, or [t] called by Gleason the D₂ morpheme, is even more frequent, and regularly found in print. The following examples are taken from newspapers and magazines only. Old Fashion Ginger Beer, barb wire, three room house, tile roof house, match your colour shirts, colour recipe book, scarlet check table cloth, long sleeve shirts, double storey house, thatch roofs caught fire, process products, process cheese, orange colour car, pickle fish, pickle onion, high heel shoes, stain glass window, high price goods, two tooth hamels, pint size picasso, king size ...

3. The loss of the alveolar suffix -ed, -d, or [t] called by Gleason the D₂ morpheme, is even more frequent, and regularly found in print. The following examples are taken from newspapers and magazines only. Old Fashion Ginger Beer, barb wire, three room house, tile roof house, match your colour shirts, colour recipe book, scarlet check table cloth, long sleeve shirts, double storey house, thatch roofs caught fire, process products, process cheese, orange colour car, pickle fish, pickle onion, high heel shoes, stain glass window, high price goods, two tooth hamels, pint size picasso, king size ...

2. Ibid.
3.2.2 Redundancies

These are fairly numerous in South African English and are given as far as possible as headwords in their own right in the text of the dictionary. With the exception of busy (at 3.2.3 number 1) these are briefly summarised here.

1. Articles (a) a half an hour, a sixpence, do a half of it (cf. do a quarter of it).
   (b) This is found most commonly in the highly characteristic third person form of address (dictionary text Part II, p. 491) in such usage as, the uncle, the baas, 'Please baas, I will dig for the baas' Dan Jacobson - [In slightly facetious forms of reference, not exclusively South African, the Mum, the girl friend etc. can be heard usually replacing my.]

   I feel much better than what I have ever felt (Advt.)
   He's much older than what I am.
   ... And we didn't want any worse name than what we already had ... H.C. Bosman, A Bekkersdal Marathon.
   This, like the third person form of address mentioned at 1. is probably the influence of Afrikaans 'Hy is ouer as wat ek is.'

3. The adverbial suffix used on borrowed adjectival items heard in the speech of children mooily, lekkerly.
   My new bike goes mooily I'm telling you.

4. Have: this occurs redundantly especially following had, and in the pronunciation spelling of [headword have, page 178].
   We wouldn't of (I've) trained her if we had have known she was in foal.
   I'd 've caught him if he hadn't 've jumped up.
   If F. had of been there I could of asked him, Darling, 25. 6. 75

5. Negatives: The redundant no and other uses of the negative are treated both at no p. 316 and negatives, uses of, p311 of Part II.

1. For form have to see also must Translations 11 (m).
It has been suggested\(^1\) that the instrusive, non-negative no has come into South African English from the regular habit in Afrikaans speech of using Nee as a sentence initiator.

No, I'm fine now. No, that'll be a pleasure. No, certainly, etc.

This mystified an English colleague to such an extent that he once asked 'Why do South Africans always say 'No' when they mean 'Yes'?' A similar phenomenon is Yes-no which will be found among the formulae in 3.2.3 Translation 11 (w).

6. Interpolations: these appear 'sprinkled' about in much South African speech and are not translated. Most contribute nothing to the meaning of the sentences in which they are heard, but give some of the most distinctive colour to colloquial English: darem, mos, sommer, maar. These, indispensable as they are to many of us, are remarkably difficult for the lexicographer to define in use or to translate. The Afrikaans description modale bywoord 'modal adverb' has been adopted for 3.3.5 and for Category 29 (Chapter IV 4.2) though this is not found, I think, in English descriptions of word classes.

7. Other redundancies from borrowed structures appear in translation. These are headwords in the text.

already from Afrikaans al is used in various structures (Part II p. 11). See also 3.2.3, 4., p. 62.

He bought it three weeks ago [already] etc.

only (p. 325) becoming increasingly common colloquially, from Afrikaans maar as in 'Shame, he's only small!' and probably from net used as a possibly redundant equivalent of 'really.'

He's only suave man (as an intensifier of an adjective) or She's only looking pleased with herself (as adverb of degree modifying a verb).

so especially in the Substandard phrase so a little, 'so 'n bietjie' or in the phrase or so (see translated formulae 11).

again usually in the use 'that's something else again' (from Afrikaans weer = again. 'Dis weer iets anders.' still probably translations from nog, tog, or even zelfs. 'There's still a verandah before the garden starts.' rather used redundantly in the phrase rather very, see translated structures 11 (t), and as a tail to a sentence usually signifying 'instead' which is probably characteristically, but not by any means exclusively South African. 'Let's go next week rather.' etc.

busy, see 1. below.

\(^1\) By Professor J. Smuts (personal communication).
3.2.3 Translated Structures

1. **Busy**: this is a redundancy of such frequency in South African English, that although it could be said to belong in 7 above, since it is a borrowed 'structure word' in translation from Afrikaans besig, it is pervasive enough to merit separate treatment as one of the most common of the translated structures.

The busy structures which appear regularly are, many of them clearly, carried over from Afrikaans in which the phrase besig om te does duty for the English -ing suffix or the Dutch -end(e) suffix in verb clusters with progressive aspect.

'The last time I saw you you were busy falling off a horse'
(Unpublished play).

It is noticeable that where in English the -ing form does duty for the participle in running water, the reading public, for the gerund running shorts, drinking glasses, reading glasses, and for what might possibly be termed a 'gerundive' from the implied passive in the case of drinking water, 1 stewing steak and eating apples; Afrikaans distinguishes between the participial modifier in lopende water and the progressive form of the verb in which 'Hy was besig om te ...' where Dutch would use the -end suffix. I am told by Professor J. Smuts that in Dutch the 'hij was besig te ...' structure can be an alternative to the 'hij was ... end' depending on the verb.

Obviously busy with a verb cluster of progressive aspect

He tense + be + busy verb + ing  
He is/was busy — ing

will not always be redundant, but the redundancy has upon it semantic as well as syntactic restrictions:

Semantic restrictions as in

(a) He was busy lying in bed. (newspaper report)
(b) We're busy waiting for him now. (Radio S. Africa)

which are clearly ridiculous, or 'Syntactic' restrictions in which the sentence cannot be broken down into what are, for English, its component propositions: e.g.

(c) I was busy drinking my gin (Port Elizabeth schoolmaster)
(d) ... the accused was busy cutting Wyand's throat (newspaper report)

cannot be thought to consist of

(c) \(S_1\) I was busy
\(S_2\) I was drinking my gin

(d) \(S_1\) The accused was busy
\(S_2\) The accused was cutting Wyand's throat.

1. Also possibly reading matter (res legenda), that which is to be read etc.
On the other hand such sentences as

(e) I'm busy cooking the dinner,
(f) He's busy writing a paper,

where the intensifier very or too could be applied to busy, such semantic restrictions could not be said to apply.

(e) \[ S_1 \text{ I'm busy} \\
S_2 \text{ I'm cooking the dinner} \]
(f) \[ S_1 \text{ He's busy} \\
S_2 \text{ He's writing a paper.} \]

In cases like these (c)-(d) busy can be replaced by engaged upon, or in the act of, though in (c) and (d) it is fairly clearly redundant and in (e) and (f) it is not, though it could be regarded as unnecessary unless the intensifier were applied to it.

It is in this sense of engaged upon that the phrase busy with (Afrikaans besig met) appears as one of the translated formulae and not as a redundancy as in the foregoing structures.

2. Word order is sometimes influenced in the order of adverbials

She sits often there. (Pauline Smith).
Did he leave now home for to come here? (Telephonist).

3. Prepositions: Most of these are used as transliterations in their Afrikaans usage patterns or translations (most of which may be regarded as substandard in English).

after (na = for, after) He's longing after his beer.
by (by = at) I left my coat by the house. 'Working there by a chemist's ...' Darling, 25.6.75.
for (vir = of) I'm so nervous for these exams.
in (in = at) He's so bad in maths.
in (in = into) ... has come in the searchlight again (newspaper).
on (op = at) He's engaged on the moment.
on (op = for, in wag op) We're waiting on supplies now.
otherside (anderkant = on the other side of) The Post Office is otherside the High Street).
over (oor = about) He's so worried over his exams.
through (deur = across) She slapped him through the face.
under (onder = among) Under the plays you find volumes of poetry all mixed together.
with (preposition for adverb, mistranslation of saam = along, with) in Come with. Take me with.
with (deur = by) He was pricked with a thorn (for 'by a thorn').
4. Translated particles: of these already, (al/yet) is perhaps the most important, and comparable with busy, since, just as busy signals progressive aspect in a verb cluster, al for Afrikaans, frequently rendered in English as 'already' signals the perfective aspect manifested as Tense + have + participle verb.

\[ \text{He pres. + have + participle + Do it } \rightarrow \text{He has done it, which contains with the straight past tense} \]

\[ \text{He past + Do it } \rightarrow \text{He did it} \]

\[ \text{to show the 'current relevance' of the perfective aspect:} \]

\[ \text{He has done it, now he can go and play.} \]

\[ \text{He did it then he went to play.} \]

In Afrikaans the contrast between these is normally signalled by al.

\[ \text{Hy het dit gedoen = He did it.} \]

\[ \text{Hy het dit al gedoen = He has done it (already).} \]

in which the al is occasionally repeated at the end of the sentence.

\[ \text{Al is used signifying both 'already' and 'yet'. SAE asks appears very frequently in questions, linking this with the loss of aspectual have mentioned in the section on simplification of verb structures.} \]

Thus 'Haven't you got it?' is rendered at times as 'Didn't you get it yet?' and 'Haven't you heard from him?' as 'Didn't you hear from him yet?'

\[ \text{There/daar - This prefix is probably classifiable as a pseudo-pronoun taking the place of this or it (Afrikaans dit) carried over from the Afrikaans structures in which the prefix daar becomes a 'pro-pronoun' by which} \]

\[ \text{van dit } \rightarrow \text{daarvan} \]

\[ \text{vir dit } \rightarrow \text{daarvoor} \]

\[ \text{in dit } \rightarrow \text{daarvoor} \]

There is a marked tendency in persons either bilingual or heavily influenced by Afrikaans to use a number of 'therein', 'thereat' and 'therefrom' structures which are in no way ungrammatical and which add at times a slightly archaic charm to their writing. An example cited in the text, however, cannot be regarded as either grammatical or stylistically pleasing.

\[ \text{Tree planting was encouraged and the Government offered prizes therefor in the territories . . . Brookes History of Native Policy in S.A., 1924.} \]

1. ...I'd of fired you already!" And I didn't even get hired yet. Darling 3.9.75
still (nog, tog, selfs) to mean

(a) further (nog) in terms of distance: There's still a garden between us and the street.

(b) all the same, nevertheless (tog) He's still a good boy whatever they say.

(c) even (selfs) I still told him not to but he didn't listen.

Other translated particles mentioned under Redundancies are rather (liever[s]), again (weer) just (sommer, net) and only (maar, net) most of which are substandard usage in most contexts, as are yet, already and still discussed above.

5. A lack of number concord between the Verb and its Subject.

Afrikaans has no inflectional differentiation for number and person in the present tense, and in the speech and writing of persons influenced by this, a lack of number concord does often occur with plural subjects: the comedian's

'There are somebody here what...'
does not, I think, occur in South African English but confusions of the following type have been observed.

There was you children (A Winter Vacation, D.A.C. Maclellan).
The plains is mostly mohair and wool. (Tailor, Cape Town).
Grapes being vegetable matter does not have ... (Student).
The make-up folks is getting hang of a snoep like everyone else these days, Darling 9.7.75.

See also 3.2.1 Short Cuts, 4. Omission of inflections for such examples of lack of concord.

He always come A when we don't expect him.
David drink A too much. etc.

which are of course classifiable as omissions.

6. Lack of number concord between Pronoun and Noun.

This is commonly heard even in educated speech and in some writing.

They are still making up their mind. (Professor, Wits)
We hope people will remember us in their will. (1820 Monument speech)
It doesn't matter if they get a few drops in their mouth.

[this type of structure can be compared with the Latin construction ex ore (not oribus) parvulorum].
It as proform for plural nouns is very common in South African English.

He bought two diamonds and put it in his pocket.

Have you seen my shoes? I think I forgot it at your house.

Here it is, the savings we promised you (Advt.)

This is probably related to the fact that Afrikaans distinguishes between

+ animate'them' hulle and
- animate'them' dit

Conversely, them is found as proform for singular nouns, usually in contexts where the speaker or writer wishes to avoid the 'him or her' locution, which cannot be said to be a particularly South African problem, but which nevertheless occurs.

When a person is stout you expect them to be heavy. (Student)

... to take someone and teach them (Student)

7. Lack of Gender Concord is found in the common affirmative that's him when the subject of discourse may be neuter (and even plural as at 6).

Q. That's the Gilbey brand isn't it? A. That's him.

Q. Is this the one you're wanting? A. That's him.

In contrast to Afrikaans dit used for - animate'them', Afrikaans renders it as hy regardless of gender which results in the locution Dis hy, the equivalent of English That's it, or United States Right! This phrase could perhaps be better included in the formulae, but since the syntactic factor of gender is involved it is included here, as is the following.

8. Lack of Tense, Number and Gender Concord found in the use of the pro forma interrogative Is it? the translation of Afrikaans Is dit? meaning Is that so? or Really? This need not result in the syntactic jumble suggested by the heading if the noun is singular and the tense present.

A. It is going to rain. B. Is it?

If however the tense is past, the number plural, the gender masculine or feminine, and the person first or second, concord might be said to 'come unstuck' on a number of fronts:

A. He was here last night. B. Is it (Tense, gender)

A. They left last week. B. Is it? (Tense, Number, gender) and so on.

This usage is very common among children and students, bypassing as it does in one convenient formula several of the niceties of grammar. It is also noticeable in the speech of some older persons influenced by contact with the young.

9. The Intrusive pronoun 'what': this has been discussed under redundancies, where it properly belongs, though as a translation of Afrikaans wat it must be mentioned here.
(a) It won't be as difficult as what you expect it to be.
This is a slightly different structure from the more frequent
(b) It's better than what I expected it to be.
in that the negative is used with as instead of the non-negative with than.

It is not easy to describe its syntactic function in either type of sentence apart from the bare fact of its total redundancy. It would however appear to be a quasi-relative pronoun in a type of apposition to the pronoun it. It could also be argued that the what would not be redundant in the second sentence if the phrase it to be were deleted: which is a further pointer to the notion of the two pronouns being in apposition to each other.

10. Indefinite pronoun substitution.

The translated phrase a person from Afrikaans 'n mens (one) is in common use as a pseudo-pronoun used in either of two ways. The first is the conversion of the formal first or second person singular non-definite pronoun one to this noun phrase: the second is the replacement of the indefinite pronouns somebody/someone, anybody/anyone by the same.

These uses simplify numerous finer points of grammar for the dialect speaker.

The first use bypasses what is considered by many to be pedantic, namely to refer to oneself exclusively, or inclusively of one's company, as one. One, however is simplicity itself as regards possessive and reflexive forms. The speaker adopting a person usually has to recourse to the pronominal possessive and reflexive forms your and yourself, as is usual in Afrikaans (regardless of the possible claims of my and myself for the first person.) One speaker however produced the following:

They must give a person three months - how can I get me all my stuff out by December 31st?
Resultant sentences of the first type are these which cannot be regarded as other than substandard.

Honestly a person doesn't know where to put your things in this place.

A person doesn't know what to do with yourself
Ag, but it's a crying shame a person can't decide what they want to be like and get it done. Derling 9.7.75.

It offends a person's aesthetic sensibilities [Judgement: Newspaper report]

He has no respect for a person's feelings.

He won't listen to anything a person says. etc.

The second type of use bypasses at times what are the complex morphosyntactic relationships between the prefixes any- and some- in a general ironing out of the differences under the blanket phrase a person.

Once a person has had a taste of a better life.... (Student)

Banda. (Newspaper)

If you are ever handing a person a gun be sure ... (University Professor)

When a person is fat you naturally expect them to be heavy (Student)

[Children's speech shows this, but it is probably not a phenomenon particular to South African English.

Would you like some/chocolate? I don't want some thanks. etc]

II. Translated 'formulae', difficult to classify, are numerous and most of those cited below I have felt to merit a place in the text of the dictionary: like much of the material, however, particularly the translated material, many of these may be regarded as 'vocabulary' items, though most do have some syntactic significance.

Verb formulae

(a) make a plan ( 'n plan maak) to arrange something, even a relatively trivial matter.

(b) pack in( inpak, om in te pak) to pack clothing, goods etc. and its obverse pack out ( uitpak, om uit te pak) to unpack, also used intransitively 'I haven't packed out yet.' Both these phrasal verbs are used especially by children as the equivalent of 'burst out' with or without 'laughing'. Both phrases are used - viz. 'we packed in' and 'we packed out' (occasionally also packed up!) with 'laughing' omitted but understood, unless the context implies the substandard usage 'We arrived at our hotel and packed out (our suitcases).'

packing out parade, an army inspection of the spread-out belongings of the men.

(c) farm with (boer met) to farm. This phrasal verb, a direct translation from Afrikaans, is found both in speech and in the press. The adoption of this apparently redundant preposition can possibly be accounted for by the fact that the English transitive verb farm, except in the form of the question What do you farm? to which the answer 'Sheep', 'Cattle', 'Apples', 'Grapes', 'Fruit' can be simply given, has apparent restrictions on the objects it can take. 'I farm apples, sheep, mealies, beef, wine
grapes, deciduous fruit, citrus, game' are all perfect semantic possibilities unlike 'I farm taxicabs, omnibuses etc. Nevertheless in every case grow or raise would be a preferable verb, or the locution 'I am a sheep- , wine-, fruit-, citrus-, cattle-farmer/rancher less awkward than any of the 'I farm ... possibilities. It is therefore not surprising that 'I farm with ... ' enjoys the currency that it does, filling the apparent vacuum between the verb and its direct object even though I farm with apples has a quaint ring to it and I farm with sheep a potential ambiguity. Further examples are cited at the entry farm with on p 126 of the draft dictionary.

(d) Excuse me (ekskuus) is found in South African English used as some of the equivalents of I beg your pardon namely 'I'm sorry I didn't hear' or 'I don't understand, would you repeat that? etc. This usage sometimes baffles English speakers unaware of the difference between Afrikaans Ekskuus and Verskoon my.

(e) ride on water (water aanry) is a frequent locution among farmers in times of drought or in regularly dry areas, signifying conveying water from place to place, normally for stock not for irrigation (see lead water (f)). The locutions 'I must ride in feed' or ride mealies to the station' show further uses of the transliteration of Afrikaans ry meaning 'convey' or 'transport'. Two particularly interesting vocabulary items reflecting this are transport rider/riding and misrybol, a bulb flowering at the time when mis (manure) was being 'ridden on' to the vineyards and lands.

(f) lead water (water lei): this is found also in the form lead outwater: the 'leading' signifies here allowing water to run usually through a network of irrigation furrows for purposes of cultivation of crops, unlike riding on water which is a drastic and laborious measure to keep stock alive.

(g) to wish you (om jou te gelukwens) is found used among South Africans without its direct object (see 3.2.1 Short Cuts) as in 'I'm going to be sure to come and wish you on your birthday'.

(h) to drink pills/tablets/medicine (pille/medisyne drink) is sometimes used instead of take or swallow, possibly because the usual form of take in Afrikaans, neem, is unlikely to pattern with pille or medisyne and the verb slik (swallow) appears to be used very frequently in a metaphorical sense, from the examples cited in the Tweetalige Woordeboek (Bosman, van der Merwe and Hiemstra) and the Tweetalige Skoolwoordeboek (Bosman, van der Merwe and Barnes). It is perhaps therefore not surprising that the simpler drink has been carried over into English 'for medicinal purposes'.

I've actually developed gout at 23 but I've got some super pills I drink for it. (Graduate, bilingual)

It's such a nuisance to leave my office to drink the tablet every four hours. (Receptionist, Grahamstown)
(i) pick up weight (gewig optel) an expression substandard in Afrikaans meaning 'to gain weight' is heard in this translated form: possibly in contrast to 'drop in weight.'

I've picked up a lot of weight since my operation. (Priest)

(j) Doesn't/don't want to (wil nie): this phrase in South African English speech frequently does not carry the meaning of negative volition as in 'He doesn't want to go to rugby today.' Instead it is used with a non-animate subject signifying won't (will not) rather than is not willing to, which implies animacy in the subject.

The car doesn't want to start. (cf. metaphorical 'The car refused to start'. vs. 'The horse refused the jump.')

This door never wants to open.

My jeans don't want to come off.

This breach never want to close. etc.

(k) get (kry) is used occasionally where have would occur in standard English.

Your dog wants her food, can she get it? (may she have it?)

(l) let (laat) meaning cause to do or make is regularly heard in speech.

Let him do it - why should you?

Order and let the shop send the stuff.

I'm not going to give up work until the doctor lets me.

(Pregnant typist).

It is noticeable that in Afrikaans laat is the common equivalent of make - 'Hy het my laat werk totdat ek moeg was'. He made me work until I was tired, which is similar to the Old English forlaetan, to cause to do; whereas let in the sense of permit or allow is frequently toelaat - 'Hy sal dit glad nie toelaat nie'. (He will certainly not allow it.)

Although laat is also regular especially in imperative structures.

Dink jy sal hy my(toelaat om) dorp toe te gaan?

Will he let me go to town, do you think?

(m) must (moet) is regularly found in South African English without the sense or meaning-factor, of obligation. ² I am told by R. W. Burchfield, editor of the Oxford English Dictionary, that this use is also found in speech in England. In South African English it appears as a regular replacement for the interrogatives shall and should and the modals shall and should. ³

When must I fetch you? Shall
How many must I type? Should
What must I tell him? Shall
What must I do now? Should/Shall

You're jealous ... Must I tell you why? Fugard, Boesman and Lena.

1. This use is, I think, rare and has not been included in the text.

2. It occurs also in the translated form 'have to' as which it is usually redundant - 'And after all that we had to have a puncture'!

3. Anybody who can help identify the woman must phone Det/Sgt X at ... E. Province Herald, 22.10.75.
The contrast of intonationally stressed must (and should) may be noted here:

We must go tomorrow. (we have to whether we want to or not).

We should go tomorrow. (we ought to but may not manage it).

Afrikaans sal signifying future intention, and sou signifying obligation or intention should or would, or supposition, in 'Hy sou dit gedoen het', do not appear to occur as regularly, or in as simple structures as moet, a factor which does, I think, show its influence in the frequent use of must in the English of South Africans. 1

(n) Can't complain (kannie kla nie) is a reply heard to questions of the type 'How goes it?', 'How are you?', 'How is it with you?' signifying, 'fine', 'all right' etc.

(o) not so? (nie waar nie? nè?) is frequently employed as a tag question after the fashion of the German nicht wahr? or the Japanese soō desu nee? or simply nè to invite the agreement of the listener, or feedback of some other kind. This usage, though it contains no actual verb, being an equivalent of isn't it? or isn't that so? can be classified roughly as a pseudo-verb. It appears to function exactly as does nè in Afrikaans, or nie waar nie? although it cannot be described as an exact translation or transliteration of either.

[play sport: this formula or verb phrase is ill-placed here since it cannot be pinpointed as a translated form. Since collecting data upon it as a piece of typical South African English for some time I have found that this is standard usage in Australia and have recently found it in the NOVA of February 1975 in an article on Jehovah's Witnesses:

'They play sport together; Brian plays tennis with Ron...' ]

This use strangely enough, though, is one of the few of which some South Africans appear to be conscious, rightly or wrongly, as something peculiar to their own dialect. (See quotation at play sport p.359 of the dictionary.) ]

1. The following query was received from an informant in 1970 and is of interest in this connection I think: 'I wonder whether the use of 'must' instead of 'should', particularly in instructions issued by Government Departments, is a translation from Afrikaans. For instance: 'This form MUST be filled in'. 'Certified testimonials MUST accompany your application'. It seems to me that 'should' is the more 'English' word to use here. The use of 'must', especially by counter officials, seems peremptory, and, unfortunately, is gaining ground.'
Other

(p) so long (solank) adverb of duration meaning 'in the meantime'

'Won't you sit down and wait so long? [Receptionist]

... He makes for the door. ... mind the shop so long you hear!' Darling, 25. 6. 75.

This is a phrase like 'play sport' of which South Africans are often conscious and which can be heard used facetiously and inaccurately:

He's Cecil's pellie blue from back home so long (Ibid)

'We could extend the stoep-so-long!' (Architect)

(q) in place of (in plaas van) 'instead of' is found both in speech and writing:

Use mangos in place of peaches.

In place of trousers they wore mutshas. etc.

[place (plek) meaning 'room' or 'space' also occurs.

Will there be place for him in the car?]

(r) just now (netnou) 'in a little while': is used more frequently to indicate the immediate future,

'He'll be here just now',

'I'm coming just now',

than the immediate past

'I thought I heard your father snoring just now.' (A Winter Vacation, D. A. C. Macleman),

or the immediate present, probably the standard English form, as in

'We have none in stock just now' [op die oomblik]

for which netnou would not be the Afrikaans equivalent.

The phrase just now is one which is regularly found by South Africans to be unintelligible to Americans and English to whom the possibility of future significance is quite bewildering.

(s) now-now (nou-nou) this phrase signifies 'on the instant', 'now', 'immediately' in South African English. I have not as yet encountered in a past tense sentence comparable with 'Hy was nou-nou hier' in speech, though it does occur I think in Alan Paton's Cry, the Beloved Country.

'It was now, now that he left.'

(t) rather very (bietjie baie): a substandard usage occurring in such contexts as

'It's rather very difficult' (Student)

'I've been rather very ill since last I wrote.' (letter)

[see also rather, Redundancies, 3. 2. 2]
(u) *I'm telling you* (ek sê vir jou) is frequently used in speech and in informal writing to emphasise the statement just made or about to follow.

'It was some party I'm telling you.'
'I'm telling you, I've never seen anything like it.'

[The phrase 'I promise you' is used similarly, but is not, I think, peculiar to South African English.]

(v) *As true as God/Bob* (so waar as ... ) is used as the foregoing for emphasising the truth of an assertion and usually follows it in substandard speech or writing. The form *'s true's Bob* is frequent, presumably to avoid any suggestion of blasphemy. An Afrikaans alternative form is *so waar's ek lewe* - 'as true as I live'.

Then she threw her bible at me - 's true as God, she did.
A Winter Vacation, D.A.C. Maclean.
I never would of schemed there was so many sick folks living there ... 's true's bob. Darling, 25.6.75

(w) *Yes-no* (Ja-nee) occurs even in educated speech (and in written dialogue) usually as an emphatic affirmative, or like *!::!9* as a sentence initiator. It does not appear, as the literal meaning might indicate, to be used as a signal of doubt or hesitation, or as an equivalent of 'Well:'

Yes-no she 's fine now. (Housewife).
Yes-no rhenosterbos has never been a problem here thank goodness. (Farmer, Carlisle Bridge) etc.

(x) *full of ...* (vol.) covered with/in: this phrase has long been noted and was quoted by Pettman: 'a...mother scolds her offspring for "rolling on the floor and coming home full of mud"' 1.

It is heard regularly in speech but occurs in writing as well signifying normally covered with..., covered in..., or all over....; these examples are from the press (including letters)

The girl's back was full of red weals.
A dead cat lay on the pavement full of flies.
The dust bins are full of ants and I'm sure the men must often be full of ants also.1

Frequent uses in speech include

'my hands/clothes are full of mud/blood/ink/dirt etc.'

1. When I arrived there, I saw the body of... lying about eight metres from the house. He was full of blood. E. Province Herald 26.9.75.
(y) **busy with** (besig met): engaged upon, having, doing etc. This phrase, related to the redundant **busy** (see 3.2.3 Translations, 1.) indicates as it does in verb clusters some activity in progress.

- He's busy with his thesis. (Student)
- It's five o'clock. Yes, the wedding - they must be busy with it now. (Judge)

(z) **on my/his/her nerve(s)** (op my, sy, haar senuwees): nervous, edgy, tense: substandard use. This does not imply that someone is getting on someone else's nerves but 'is on' his own. I think the phrase is substandard in Afrikaans.

'*Miss Jean is so op haar senuwees na daardie operasie'*

(Coloured servant).

Magdalene's always complaining that she's 'on her nerfs' - now I'm 'on my nerfs' too. (Housewife).

(aa) **and-them** (-hulle): and company, and family, et al. This phrase usually follows a proper name, and normally is used in the third person.

'Her son-and-them are down at the sea.'

'When are Bill-and-them coming?

though it can be used as a third person address form in Afrikaans -

'Hoe laat moet ek Miss Jean-hulle hier verwag?' (Servant)

... otherwise my boet and them will die larfing

Blossom Broadbeam, Darling, 29.1.1975.

The phrase, as is the one which follows, is a convenient pronominal for a number of possibilities signifying the group, the family, and even occasionally a single person. 'Jan-and-them' could mean 'Jan and his wife.' This use, though I would suggest it is somewhat 'plat', has an interesting parallel in the Southern United States in which *you-all* is standard for more than one person addressed. Its use as a plural suffix the cow and them (cows) in the English of Jamaica is mentioned in the entry on p. 14 of the dictionary.

(bb) **or so** (of so (iets)): or something of the sort or something like that etc. This is found in use in speech as a pseudo-pronoun and short cut for the meanings suggested here. It does not appear to have any equivalent of the English signal of approximation as in

'It's a hundred miles or so farther on'

nor does it appear to be related to the **so** (redundant in English) of

'We danced so a little'

which might be an equivalent of 'just'.
Let's stop and have a cup of coffee or so.
Surely an organisation like that must have some pamphlets or so that they can send people?

(cc) who-all (wie allmal): this is used as a plural, + human interrogative 1 pronoun as in
Who all are coming this evening?

3.3 The Syntactic Categories and 'Translations'

3.3.1 Introductory Note

The material of Category 29, and the translations and transliterations of Category 10 are for convenience duplicated here, but with the lists numbered in series instead of being given the category numbers which appear in the dictionary, 29vb, 29adj etc.

Naturally, only relatively few of the items listed here may be described as part of 'dialect grammar' itself, though quite numerous syntactic deviances are represented in the first and the second lists, and in those of the 'function words' in lists 5 - 9. (3. 3. 5).

I say 'relatively few' because as far as possible all non-nouns in the overall word list for the dictionary have been assigned to a 'syntactic' category which means that all purely lexical verbs, adjectives and adverbs are included here.

(1) The translated structures or transliterated forms are listed together as the first of the tables below (3.3.2): those in the Detailed Categorisation to be found in Chapter IV, 4.2 are, being a mixed and heterogenous collection, placed in Category 10.

(2) Verbs and Verbal Phrases. This group (3.3.3) is perhaps that of the greatest interest and consists of verbs, verb phrases and a few pseudo-verbs: the fact that about one hundred and eighty fall into this group is an objective sign that South African English is not simply a set of 'names for things'. A relatively large number of verbs then may be taken as an indication that the South African element is more deeply entrenched than it would be in the case of a scattered 'top-dressing' of nouns and adjectives. Many of these verbs are of course borrowed, or borrowed in translation from Afrikaans or less frequently (call, sleep, borrow, stay well) from the African languages.

(3) Adjectives, Noun Modifiers and Group Modifiers (3.3.4) is also a fairly large group containing not only genuine adjectives, (namely those which will take degrees of comparison, -er and -est, or an

1. This is also found as a pronominal initiator of a noun clause 'He doesn't know who-all are coming'.
intensifier such as very) but also modifiers of other types. There are group modifiers like skiet-en-donder, off the veld, out-of-town, up country, nouns which modify other nouns such as Afrikaner, Cape Dutch, and participial modifiers like eaten out, unwisseled, clapped. Numerous nouns are, of course, used attributively as modifiers: this is usually indicated in the text.

There are, furthermore, modifiers in this group which are normally not free forms but which function as prefixes, frequently in the names of plants e.g. hotnot-, boesmans-, rooi-, or such items as voor- or agter-(skot, -slag, etc.)

All modifiers in the group are marked A (attributive) and P (predicative); some are both: thus with vrot A, P, as with 'rotten', there are two possible positions: one can say 'The apple is vrot' predicatively, or 'It's a vrot apple' attributively. On the other hand a man can, predicatively 'be platsak' but could hardly describe himself as 'a platsak ou': just as 'That man is well' is generally accepted, but 'a well man' is substandard. This coding therefore is a key to usage: e.g. we are unlikely to meet 'an off the veld ox', a battle which 'is play-play', an omgekrap auntie', a 'full of mud foot', or a fool who 'is blerry.' Naturally, as with standard English, many adjectives and other modifiers can work both ways.

(4) Adverbs (3.3.5) On account of the structure of Afrikaans in which adjectival and adverbial forms usually do not differ, some of the borrowed adjectives can be used adverbially in English and there is an overlap between this group and the preceding one. Most of these, as mentioned in the preceding section, can also be taken to be adjectival subject complements particularly with certain verbs: though for English they can usually be regarded as adverbs of manner, answering as they do the question, 'How?' e.g.

She's been going round haasbek/langbek/dikbek for months.
How has she been going round?

Haasbek/langbek/dikbek (viz. adverbs of manner)

cf.

She looks dikbek/langbek as usual (viz. adjective as subject complement).

Note: This structure for English can take either an adjective or a noun as subject complement.

She looks sulky.
She looks a mess.

There is, however, a further adverbial group, listed under
3.3.1

(5) Modal Adverbs and intensifiers which includes what are still sometimes called 'adverbs of degree' which are used, not as true adverbs, that is modifying verbs, but as modifiers of adjectives or other adverbs.

(6) Pronouns and Pseudopronouns. This small group comprises both genuine and pseudo-pronouns. They have in common with the exception of the prefix there- that they are used instead of the indefinite pronouns 'someone', 'somebody', etc. or in the case of niks, peanuts and zut of 'very little' or 'nothing.' The avoidance of direct second-person pronouns by many South Africans is discussed in the text at the entry headed third person form of address.

(7) Prepositions. These are all English prepositions or prepositional phrases used in ways which are non-standard English, carried over from Afrikaans, e.g. by (from Afrikaans by) = at or beside; under (from Afrikaans onder) = among; over (from Afrikaans oor) = about etc. The phrases e.g. 'on the moment', 'I'm on my nerves', 'use X in place of Y', 'she smacked him through the face' are all translations or transliterations of Afrikaans structures and are mostly found in sub-standard usage. The -out of the combinations beaten-, eaten-, tramped- and shot out is translated from the Afrikaans prefix uit-.

(8) Redundancies listed here are, most of them, discussed in the text as separate entries and in the entry headed redundancies.

(9) Omissions are treated as a whole in the omissions entry in text with certain cross references to other items.

3.3.2

1. Translations or transliterations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective with infinitive</th>
<th>come to hand</th>
<th>forget</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>all two</td>
<td>come/came there</td>
<td>full of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>already</td>
<td>catch</td>
<td>give</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-and-them</td>
<td>deadstill</td>
<td>goodie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad friends</td>
<td>doesn't want to</td>
<td>* go well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bite one's teeth</td>
<td>drink</td>
<td>have to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* borrow</td>
<td>excuse me</td>
<td>hell in, the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>busy</td>
<td>family</td>
<td>hell out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>busy with</td>
<td>far</td>
<td>him, that's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can't complain</td>
<td>farm, the</td>
<td>Holland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come right</td>
<td>for</td>
<td>hope so, don't</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
howl
is it?

isn't it?

joking, you're
just now
lend
make a plan
must
negative, uses of nerves

on my/your etc.

works on my/
your etc.

never

no
not so
now

now-now

old fashioned
Old Year's Night

only

on the moment

otherwise

pack in

pick out

pick up weight

place

place of, in

plan, to make a

* From African languages.

2. Verbs and verbal phrases

abba
ask
assega(a)i
bake
baklei
ban
be creep
bell
bite one's teeth

boeke vat
bog
bore
[A.E.] borrow
braai
braak
bray, brei, brey
brei riems
bring op skoot

brom
bry
bundu-bash
[A.E.] call
came/come there
camp
can't complain
classify
reclassify
come to hand  kuier  row
commandeer  kurvey  ru(ck)
complain, can't  laager  ruk,
  cut  lead water  run (veld)
deprclaim  lend  sala kahle
divorce  let  scandal
doesn't/don't want to  loer  scare
don't hope so  loop  schlerent
  drag  mooi loop  scoff
  drink (pills, medicine)  maak gou  scoff/e skoffel
  dwaal  make  shambok
  excuse me  make a plan  shine through
cull pregnant  moan  shoot out
farm with  moera  show through
forget  mooi loop  sit up
  give  must  sjambok
  go black  [nâ]  skel
  goef  neuk  skinder
  go garishly  [never]  skit/skut
  gooı  [not so]  skop
  go well  off load  skop lawaaı
  hamba  off saddle  skrik
  hamba kahle  op skoot, to bring  slag
  handle off  outspan  slat
  hap  pack in 1 and 2  sleep, 1 and 2
  have  pack out, 1 and 2  [A.E.] sleep
  have to  pick out  sluk
  him, that's  pick up weight  smaaak
  hope so, don't  plak  smear
  hou  plan, make a  smell out
  howl  play  smoore
  hunt  play sport  snik
  inspan  play white  sny, 1 and 2
  is it?  prop  span, in
  isn't it?  pronk  span, out
  jaag  reclassify  spog
  joking, you're  release  spoor
  jol  rest  sport, play
  klap  ride  stay
kneehalter  ride  stay well
kotch  ride in  steek
kraal  ride flat  stick
  ride on water  stick away
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Afrikaans</th>
<th>Afrikaans</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stick fast</td>
<td>throw bones</td>
<td>waai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stick on</td>
<td>toor</td>
<td>wait on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stokkiesdraai, play</td>
<td>tramp</td>
<td>want to /doesn't want to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stokvel, play</td>
<td>trek</td>
<td>wash spears</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sukkel</td>
<td>try for white</td>
<td>water, ride on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take out</td>
<td>uppsaddle</td>
<td>wish you, to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>takes me up to ...</td>
<td>vasbyt</td>
<td>with, throw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>telling you, I'm thank you</td>
<td>vastrap</td>
<td>woel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw</td>
<td>verneuk</td>
<td>work on his/your/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw dead</td>
<td>voorloop</td>
<td>my nerves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw wet</td>
<td>vrek</td>
<td>worry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw with</td>
<td>vroetel</td>
<td>zoll</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vry</td>
<td>zone</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[A. E.] pseudo verbs
[A. E.] usually Afrikaans

3.3.4

3. Adjectives, Noun Modifiers and Group Modifiers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Afrikaans</th>
<th>Afrikaans</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adjective with</td>
<td>Cape Dutch A, P</td>
<td>Kaapse Hollands P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
<td>clapped P</td>
<td>kragdadig(e) A, P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>African, for</td>
<td>cronky A, P</td>
<td>kroes(ie) A, P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Afrikaans, A, P.</td>
<td>deadstill P [adv. m.]</td>
<td>langbek P [adv. m.]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Afrikaner A</td>
<td>deurmekaar P</td>
<td>moeg P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agter A</td>
<td>dik A, P</td>
<td>mooi A, P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bang A, P</td>
<td>dikbek P</td>
<td>multi-national A, P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beaten out A, P</td>
<td>dom A, P</td>
<td>mush A, P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beneek(te) A, P</td>
<td>Dutch A, P</td>
<td>naa P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>best A</td>
<td>egte A</td>
<td>oes P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>binn A</td>
<td>far A</td>
<td>off-colour A, P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blou, blauuw A</td>
<td>fies P</td>
<td>old fashioned A, P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bleddy A</td>
<td>* for Africa</td>
<td>omgekrap P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blerry A</td>
<td>fris A, P</td>
<td>otherwise P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blind A, P</td>
<td>full of ... P</td>
<td>ou A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blink A</td>
<td>haasbek P [adv. m.]</td>
<td>out-of-town A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boere- A</td>
<td>herstigte A</td>
<td>overmass P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boesmans- A</td>
<td>holbol A</td>
<td>pap A, P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bont A, P</td>
<td>hotnoots- A</td>
<td>papnat P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bos- A</td>
<td>hunted out A, P</td>
<td>parmantig A, P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>botter- A</td>
<td>improved A, P</td>
<td>[adv. m]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brak A, P</td>
<td>jags A, P</td>
<td>plat A, P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brede A</td>
<td>kaal A, P [adv. m.]</td>
<td>platsak P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>busy (with) P</td>
<td>kaalgat P [adv. m.]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kaalgat A, P [adv. m.]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.3.4

play-play A
poegaai P
raw A, P
red 1 A, P
red 2 A, P
red 3 A
right, not P
salted A, P
schimmel/skimmel A
scurvy A
shu-shu A, P
skeel P [adv. m]
skel A, P [adv. m]
skiet-en-donder A
skut A
slap A, P
slapkat P
slim A, P
slyt A
snaaks A, P

- 79 -

vaal- A
vaarterig P
e [adv. place]
veld A
e [adv. place]
verdomde A
verkramp P
verkrampte A
verlep P
verlig P
verligte A
vies P
voldy P
volksvreemde A
voor- A
vrot A, P
wait-a-bit A
ware A
warm A, P
wissel A
wosses P, A
yl A, P

A = Attributive
P = Predicative
[adv. m] = also used as adverbials of manner
* A hyphen signifies noun modifier or adjective usually found in a prefix,
e.g. bos-

3.3.5 Other

4. Adverbs usually found primarily as adjectives in SAE, but used occasionally as modifiers of verbs.
deadstill [adv. m] kaalgat [adv. m] skeef [adv. m]
dikbek [adv. m] langbek [adv. m] skelm [adv. m]
haasbek [adv. m] off the veld [adv. pl.] *up country [adv. pl.]
kaal [adv. m] parmantig [adv. m] [x 5 0 long ] [adv. of duration]

5. Modal Adverbs and Intensifiers
again moerava
already mos
binne never
darem now
doer now-now
hellout rather
helluva rather very
maar so

* Post-modifier

sommer
still
there
yet

so a little
### 6. Pronouns and pseudo-pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pronoun/Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>alles-niks</td>
<td>all two or so third person form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and them</td>
<td>peanuts of address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baie</td>
<td>a person who-all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mekaar</td>
<td>pronouns, omission of zut</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 7. Prepositions and Prepositional Phrases

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Example/Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>by</td>
<td>off the veld</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for</td>
<td>on ... nerves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>on the moment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in place of</td>
<td>otherside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in the/out of the road</td>
<td>out with over</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 8. Redundancies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word/Words</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>little small/little</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>again</td>
<td>maar so</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>already</td>
<td>mos (yellow) jaundice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>article, a, the, an</td>
<td>negative sommer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>busy</td>
<td>now still</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but</td>
<td>now-now what</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>darem</td>
<td>no yet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finished and (klaar)</td>
<td>(sugar)diabetes (horse) riding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have to</td>
<td>rather</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 9. Omissions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part of Speech</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>articles</td>
<td>prepositions/particles 're third person sing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ed</td>
<td>particles vb inflection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possessive suffix</td>
<td>pronoun/noun</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### [Suffixes]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suffix</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-goed</td>
<td>-heid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ie</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### [Prefix]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prefix</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>there-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER IV

The Treatment of Dialect Vocabulary

4.1 Introduction: the taxonomic approach; problems of inclusion

The primary terrain of any lexicographer is of course the vocabulary, though I hope the text will show that far more than vocabulary must and does concern the maker of a dialect Dictionary.

Dialect vocabulary itself, being only part of the usage of the individual, to whichever English speech community he belongs, requires different treatment from that used for a whole language.

The primary problem involved is what to include in the word list. For this text the word list was prepared gradually over a period of two and a half years and on what might be called a taxonomic basis of categorisation into experiential fields. During the writing up of these in the succeeding two years many more items have been added to the initial word list.

The notion of classification into categories each covering some aspect of human life and experience was originally adopted for a pilot experiment which was not ever put to the test, largely because it would have involved large groups of school children, and school teachers are notoriously unsympathetic to dialect usage. This abortive experiment was designed with a view to establishing something like a Basic SAE Vocabulary of say, three hundred and fifty items known to, if not actually used by, a large majority of the subjects consulted. As a basis for selection of items for scrutiny, certain categories, Food, Drink, Birds, Beasts, Clothes, Houses, etc. of a simple everyday nature were drawn up, and words added to each at random as a suitable item for inclusion was encountered in reading or conversation. When the scheme for carrying out this experiment was abandoned, a small but highly viable nuclear word list remained and the idea of expanding this to form the lexicon of a categorised dictionary was born.

Obviously the lexicographer mad enough to abandon the alphabet in favour of categories as a listing procedure deserves to be disregarded

1. This is discussed in Chapter 1, I.1
2. The full categorisation scheme appears at 4.2, pp. 90-189.
as a crank, as without knowledge of the category into which a desired word falls no reader would be able to use such a text. The categories then are inevitably an 'extra', not a substitution for the tried and true if arbitrary method of alphabetisation. An index of the type used by Roget in his Thesaurus would, to a certain extent, make a categorised text workable, but it would have long ceased to be a dictionary in any of the familiar senses of the word.

Categorisation as a means of treating and of selection of dialect vocabulary has several decided advantages for the lexicographer, in that it provides almost made-to-measure answers to the captious critic who declares all dialect vocabulary is 'slang', and to the inevitable problem of what to include. These points are discussed in Chapter I, 1.1 to 1.4.

The criticism that any dictionary of SAE is nothing but a dictionary of 'slang' has all too often been levelled at the Dictionary of SAE project as a whole, and erroneous and short-sighted as the view is, it is exceedingly prevalent, and to have a counter argument to it is most desirable. This is provided by categorisation. The categories into which this vocabulary is divided are most of them far removed from slang. Apart from this aspect, categorisation is a useful and established method of treating vocabulary, though not, of course, lexicographically. In his study The English Word, 1 a Russian-published textbook in lexicology, I.V. Arnold describes '... the well-known thematic subgroups, such as terms of kinship, names for parts of the human body, colour terms, military terms and so on' and further that 'The basis of grouping ... is not only linguistic but extra-linguistic: the words are associated because the things they name occur together and are closely connected in reality. It has been found that these words constitute quite definitely articulated spheres held together by differences, oppositions and distinctive values.' The detailed index of fields covered by the individual categories accompanies the notes on them at 4.2 and only the main headings and numbers follow here. (1) Address, Modes of, (2) African World, African language items and other African terms, uses or customs, (3) Birds (not domestic), (4) Church and State, (4a) The Church, (4b) The State: Politics, Law and Government, (5) Clothing and Footwear, (6) Creatures (Wild Animals, Reptiles etc.), (7) Dishes and Cookery, (8) Drinking and Smoking, (9) Exclamations and Interjections, (10) Expressions, Idioms and Slang, (11) Farming and Domestic Animals, (12) 'Fish', (13) Flowers, (14) Fruits and Vegetables, (15) Games, Dances and Diversions.

It can be seen from these that the SAE vocabulary is spread over many and various fields of human experience, in which naturally many colloquial items, in the strict sense, occur. Since dialect exists more markedly in speech than in writing, this is only to be expected. To dismiss all colloquial usage as slang is both invidious and incorrect. However, attempting a hard and fast definition of one's own terms of reference in this respect leads one on to dangerous ground since no line can be drawn through that territory in which the colloquial shades off into slang.

Two categories, (10) and most of (9), carry the label 'Colloquial' and many items perhaps, 'Slang', though these two areas of usage inevitably overlap even when the terms are applied as objectively as possible. Many items from other categories are marked 'Colloquial', defined in the labelling system of this text as 'informal in speech or writing', but few actually carry the label 'Slang'. Many categories contain no colloquial items: these include the names of flora and fauna, landscape and topography and the very numerous place-name formatives, treated in more detail elsewhere (Chapter IV, 4.4).

It is to be hoped that the categorised listing of the vocabulary, preceding the main body of the entries, will demonstrate the broad application of the SAE vocabulary, without undue labouring of the point that dialect is not slang.

Consideration of the important problem of what to include in such a dictionary shows the advantages of the categorisation system even more clearly.

One reason for continuing with the categories after the making of the original experimental word list was the question of the proportions of items of different kinds. Examination of other dialect dictionaries, one by a detailed counting procedure, others by a more
random sampling, showed two features which the categorisation system has helped to obviate or mitigate. Firstly, a heavy proportion of dialect vocabulary is apt to consist of names for things: in the text of Part II, however, the section labelled throughout, 29 (Syntactic Categories), the only non-semantic classification, shows the other word classes, marking all non-nouns according to their syntactic function. Secondly, particularly in the Australian and New Zealand supplement to the Pocket Oxford Dictionary, the number of names of flora and fauna, 619 of nearly 1700 items, 36.4%, is overwhelming in proportion to the remaining vocabulary. Accordingly categories (3) Birds, (6) Creatures, (12) Fish, (13) Flowers, (28) Plants and (32) Trees and Shrubs have been deliberately kept as small as possible in this text.

Numerous standard biological works treat the flora and fauna of South Africa in great and informed detail, invariably including the local or vernacular names, often in separate indexes. I cannot feel, therefore, that the lexicographer's terms of reference embrace the writing of a biological glossary, treating, of necessity, with great brevity, what is fully and better dealt with elsewhere. These items therefore are numerically restricted, and confined as far as possible to items encountered in everyday life, or in non-specialist texts. For purposes of this experimental dictionary they may be regarded as the peripheral or 'randwoordeskat' in relation to the more solid core of terms making up the 'kernwoordeskat' and the extended 'uitgebreide kernwoordeskat' described by L. C. Eksteen.

Another problem is that of the number of African language borrowings to be included as these could be, if the field of anthropology were much drawn upon, extremely numerous. Of the nearly 1700 items in the Australian and New Zealand Supplement already mentioned, 234 items are classifiable as 'Abo' (Aboriginal), that is 14% of the whole. Many of these aboriginal words are names in the 619 (36.4%) items of flora and fauna. There is, of course, a similar tendency in SAE: flora and fauna do frequently have vernacular names. The question of the proportion of such words in SAE, is, however, a minor one compared with the Australian, as SAE draws primarily upon Afrikaans and not on the African languages. It is likely therefore that the percentage of indigenous language borrowings will be far lower, overall for SAE. In the experimental dictionary of Part II there are about 200 words of African language origin, approximately 6.25% of the estimated total of 3250.

1. L. C. Eksteen Die Leksikologie van Afrikaans, Taalfasette 9, 1969
2. This is mentioned in Chapter I, 1.5.
A primary problem of inclusion also touched upon in the introduction and in the section on labelling is that of the 'bad' words which recent lexicographical practice in the Heritage Dictionaries includes, labelled 'Vulgar' for the meaning, and 'Vulgar Slang' for any extension of meaning. Their inclusion excited criticism in a recent review of the new Heritage Dictionary of the English Language (1973) and one hesitates to contemplate what Dr Johnson's reactions to such practices would have been, in the light of his remarks of over two hundred years ago: 'Barbarous or impure words and expressions, may be branded with some note of infamy, as they are carefully to be eradicated wherever they are found; and they occur too frequently in the best writers'. The recent Grobbelaar Commission's expert upon matters lexicographical expressed himself in favour of the non-exclusion of those 'bad' words which occur as part of SAE. Those included in the text are *get*, which has an independent existence as a place name formative, *moer* as a term of abuse and in the childish compound intensifier 'a moer of a good kick' (apart from its botanical sense), *kak* as a noun, a modifier and an expletive, *pram-* as a place name formative and lastly with some misgivings *poes*. This inclusion is to enter a caveat for the benefit of the British visitor or settler, usually a woman, whose habit is to repeat loudly 'Puss Puss Puss' when calling a cat, a practice I have seen excite both ridicule and horror in South Africans, and in servants in this country. The entry therefore takes the form:

*poes* [pus] n; Unaccept. Slang. The female genitals: see *puss.*

and

*puss* [pVs] n; Obj. in SAE: see *poes.*

While I should personally prefer to exclude this particular obscenity there is a practical issue involved, and I feel it would be poor hospitality to the stranger, for whom much of this text is designed, not to give an indication of what can unwittingly make him, or her, appear ridiculous.

On the surface, at any rate to people used to the English style of lexicography rather than the different, somewhat encyclopaedic, approach of American lexicographers, the inclusion of place names may seem most unorthodox. I am always surprised and disapproving


myself when I encounter the names, populations and whereabouts of specific places in the body of a dictionary where I feel that they have no rightful place.

South African place names, however, are a challenge for the SAE lexicographer since they break up into meaningful units or formatives which occur repeatedly in different combinations and which are to most strangers and even sometimes to South Africans themselves quite incomprehensible. While these formatives cannot, many of them, be regarded as dialect in the strict sense, there is a very good case for their inclusion as formatives only, not as proper names, in the body of a dictionary of SAE (see 4.4). Firstly, with the stranger or traveller in mind it seems desirable that this handbook should contain the wherewithal to interpret a fair number of the place names he may encounter: secondly, many of these formatives constitute dictionary items in themselves, particularly those topographical terms such as veld, vlei, kloof, krans, poort and drift which have an existence in the dialect quite independent of their onomastic function.

Apart from these two factors, South African place names are apt to follow the old patterns and the relatively recent names as Verwoerdburg, Randburg, Roodepoort, Bosberg and even Welgemoedboven illustrate this. One can therefore conclude that the old formatives retain their productivity, and that these varying elements are likely to have future as well as past and present use in the construction of names, as new settlements, suburbs, townships or mines are built or opened up.

Their inclusion in the body of the text, while being treated as a separate category, listed with a reference number of their own (27 a-1), will enable any interested reader to examine the place name material as a subject in itself, whereas it will not obtrude upon the attention of the user to whom this material is of marginal or no interest, which it might if it were treated as a separate section either prefatory or appended.

Most of these place name formatives are fairly high frequency items apart from such items as pram- and -twist- each of which has only two occurrences which I can trace. The inclusion in very many cases, not only of the nouns I have designated +topographical 1 (veld,
vlei, drift, berg, krans etc.) but also of the names of plants, trees, birds, animals and fish, dovetails with the independent entry of an item of flora or fauna (waboom, suikerbos, kiepersol, marcelaboom, malgas, loerie, kabeljou, boebok, das(sie)). This gives a number of entries with double significations, particularly interesting for such a text. On the other hand there are many of these terms from the flora, fauna and topography of South Africa which have no right there other than by virtue of their being place name formatives, such as bron, kuil, gans, leeu, rob(ben), olifant, since they cannot be regarded as current in SAE. The same is true of the verbs, verb participles, some of the adjectives, and of course the articles.

Several of the place name formatives as I have said cannot be regarded as other than very low frequency items, and the same is true of many examples in the overall word list. In the question 'Why include such a rare word as X?' there is, I feel, an important principle of lexicography at stake, namely that it is usually for the unusual item that any dictionary is consulted. A native speaker of English is unlikely to look up a word like 'house', 'grass' or 'soap', but he is very likely to want to check on 'taxonomy', 'eleemosynary' or 'argot', and the lexicographer who omits such items on account of their rarity is disregarding or avoiding part of his primary duty to his readers, that is to elucidate what they do not know rather than what they do.

It is therefore, without apology that some rare historical or legal terms are included, some African items which are part of the argot of Drum magazine journalism, or odd items of usage heard among Eastern Cape farmers. Rare beasts, however, such as the kommetjegatkat, although he appears in the work of some early travellers, have no real place in this text, and the same is true of plants and flowers for the reasons outlined earlier in this section.

Other items, such as obsolete measures or institutions, monetary units or offices still found in South African texts, old and more recent, are clearly marked as historical (Hist.), but nevertheless hold a most important place in the lexicon.

The dialect dictionary is, I feel, no exception to the rule that the rare items merit inclusion. Particularly to the South African reader the rare items are likely to be those that are of interest. Run-of-the-mill items of his everyday vocabulary are scarcely likely to interest him, whereas more unusual or historical items should - unless
he has a thirst for etymologies 'What on earth can be the origin of a word like voetstoots or even tronk?!' or for facts 'how many inches in a Cape foot?' (now, alas, centimetres) or a personal interest in place names, which can have an endless fascination, particularly for people travelling by car.

From the early stages of making the daily growing word list, experimental patterns of entry were made, again posing the 'how much?' or 'how little?' question about the information or detail to be included. In a so-designated 'Compact' dictionary there is, regrettably, no room for historical material to back up the definition, though in this one illustrative contexts which add so much to the meaning of a word by showing it in use are included. For the reason that this material is limited, actual definition requires extra care and, where possible, extra detail without undue wordiness. But, as a general rule for lexicography of this kind, I would submit that the definition itself should be fuller than that of an item treated on historical principles, where a full-scale spread of illustrative contexts can be given.

The pattern of entries

There are, obviously, certain indispensable items of information which must be in any dictionary entry.

There is, firstly, the spelling (or spellings) of the item. (The only purpose of many persons in using ordinary dictionaries seems to be to ascertain correct spellings). Secondly, the pronunciation, treated in detail in Chapter II, must be included in as simple and workable a form as possible, particularly in a dictionary of a dialect containing as many borrowed non-English words and sounds as does SAE. Thirdly, the word class or grammatical function of the word is also a sine qua non, and if the word has functions both as noun and verb, or as adjective and adverb, this must be made as clear and explicit as possible. The topic of the grammatical significations is touched upon in Chapter I and in the section on labelling, as it is necessary to modernise the general concept of the so-called parts of speech (pars orationis) to avoid obsolete forms of syntactic description, or those which should be obsolete but regrettably are not. A case in point is the tendency to call anything and everything an adjective through want of better terminology, e.g. the dem. adj. {Shorter Oxford English Dictionary}, some adj. (American Heritage

1. As far as possible the clearer term 'word classes' in line with the Afrikaans woordsoorte is used in the text.
Dictionary). The designations used in the experimental dictionary are listed at Sections IA and IB of the tables at the end of 4.3 (4.3.1). Lastly, of course, there is the meaning, the item of primary importance to most dictionary users. For the text the significations of the words have been defined as clearly as possible, not sacrificing clarity to excessive brevity, and extra information of interest or significance is given bracketed. The amount of work involved for individual definitions differs considerably: one may give no trouble while another may require consultation of numerous reference works.

The same may be said of the etymologies, given in this text but omitted by many dictionaries and often dealt with in separate texts such as Afrikaanse Etimologie of Boshoff and Nienaber or the Oxford Dictionary of Etymology.

In many cases etymologies given are tentative or unknown, marked either dub. for doubtful or 'unknown', whichever is the more appropriate, and prob. (probably) or poss. (possibly) for one which seems shaky. Various sources have been used for the etymologies given in the experimental dictionary, and, naturally, personal theories in tricky cases like beast, Dopper or osaties have been aired. In the text of Part II all etymologies, in accordance with the wishes of the publisher, are placed last and below each entry.

A usage or status label has as far as possible been given where this is applicable or desirable. These labels are discussed at 4.3 and listed at 4.3.1. Also, wherever possible or available there is a cross reference or references to comparable items or usages in other English dialects: thus (u)mlungu is followed by cf. U.S. whitey, and poor white followed by cf. U.S. red neck, white trash, Jam. E. (Jamaican English) white jeg, and so on. These cross references are not as numerous as I could wish, though this part of the work has proved a particularly interesting and fruitful field. It is discussed in section 4.3 on account of the set of labels introduced for this purpose, and as a topic in its own right in section 4.5.

Where possible illustrative quotations are given with each entry; these are discussed in the introductory note to the Bibliography.

Note: A full sample entry, putu, is given at the end of the brief introduction to Part II.
4.2 The Detailed Categorisation of the Vocabulary

This section appears here in the form in which it has been prepared for the experimental dictionary where it should follow the introduction, its index preceding not following the categorised material. Each of the thirty-four categories is presented as a word list preceded by a note on its contents. In certain larger, less homogeneous categories, 2 African World, 4 Church and State, 16 Health, Moods, Medicine and Witchcraft and 18 House and Garden, Building and Buildings, the material is divided into smaller lexical or experiential sets, followed in each case by a full, alphabetised word list. In only one case has this proved impracticable namely 11 Farming and Domestic Animals, which contains over four hundred items (about 12.5% of the total). These are set out as larger groups: Stock farming which includes types and breeds of domestic animals and birds, with a sub-section on animal diseases; Veld, Fodder, Pastures and Grazing with a sub-section on plant pests, followed by smaller sections on Buildings and Fencing, Agriculture, Crops and Payment, Water, Pests, Plant Diseases and lastly People. To make, finally, in addition to these, a full alphabetised list seemed desirable in the interests of general uniformity in the section, but unjustifiable, I think, in the light of the number of terms and the amount of space involved.

It should perhaps be added here that the original word list for the dictionary was put together by means of the categories, and only afterwards alphabetised so that the systematic writing of entries could be accomplished in order; that is, that the alphabetisation of the material was secondary to the categorisation in the conception of the text as a whole.

Note:

There are no consistent spelling rules observable for the compounding of words in SAE as there are in Afrikaans, though usually if one item is Afrikaans and one English such as trek ox or rooibos tea (cf. rooiboste) they are separated or hyphenated. Even this is not a dependable rule of thumb, however, as outspan and kaffirboom show: and the English tendency to maintain separation is not followed in camelthorn and dryland. These do of course appear as camel('s) thorn and dry land, and lack of consistency in the written data therefore may well be reflected in the word lists which follow and in the draft dictionary, in spite of conscious efforts to maintain a degree of uniformity within items.
THE CATEGORISED SURVEY OF THE VOCABULARY

Introductory Note

The idea of categorising the vocabulary was born of two things. The first was an abortive attempt at making a representative list of 350 items of South African English for use as a text with selected groups to ascertain how widely known these apparently 'basic' items actually are. This test has yet to be made. The second was the conviction of everyone to whom I spoke that I was making a Dictionary of slang. From this came the necessity to prove that I was doing nothing of the sort. The rough categories, previously regarded as representative groups from which to work out a linguistic test, were re-worked in a serious attempt to show how many aspects of life are pervaded by South African English far removed from slang. The categories grew to thirty-four in number, each covering what might be called an 'experiential' field, only two of which (9 and 10) deal specifically with colloquialisms.

Many areas of basic human experience - food, clothing, furniture, houses, cookery, schooling, Church, politics, trade, travelling, the cultivation of the soil, the weather, as well as the birds, beasts and plant life of this country and of course its history are all pervaded by words and phrases unlikely to be known or understood anywhere else in the world. Many of these, of course, are names for things peculiar to South Africa. Many others are South African expressions for things common to many speech communities, most of which are not 'slang' at all. It is with the intention of showing the scope and number of these fields of experience that these categories have been prepared, and in the hope that the mosaic they form will give a clearer picture of English as a whole in South Africa.

An actual Categorised Dictionary involving the combination of categories and explanatory material is one which cannot be made unless the dictionary is done twice over: once arranged alphabetically with all the data relative to each item, and again with the same material arranged in categories. This would clearly be ineligible in terms of waste and expense, so a compromise has been attempted here. The explanatory, alphabetised body of the dictionary follows the categorised word lists.

Most people are accustomed to 'looking up' a word in Roget's Thesaurus of the English Language, a process which simply involves putting the categorisation principle to work. A limited subject index to the categories is provided here to assist in the business of finding that body of vocabulary relevant to a particular subject.
The thirty-four categories into which the vocabulary is divided are preceded by this subject index, thus a reader interested in animals will be directed to 6 Creatures, in the case of wild animals, or to 11 Farming and Domestic Animals; another interested in gardening will be directed to 18 House and Garden, Building and Buildings, 13 Flowers, 28 Plants, 32 Trees and Shrubs. Each category takes the form of a word list preceded by a short account of what is in it, usually with examples of words of each kind. Categories which cover very broad fields are, for convenience, divided into short word lists under which the terms which belong together are grouped. Thus 18 House and Garden, Building and Buildings, is subdivided into Houses with sections on furniture, kitchen equipment, gardens, cellar etc.; Timber, the names of indigenous woods; Outbuildings and Other Outdoor Structures covering sections on fencing, outhouses, dwellings; Land, Building Construction and Tools containing builders' words, tools, floor types; and Church and Other Public Buildings. The largest category of all, Farming and Domestic Animals is also subdivided into Stock Farming with Animal Diseases as a sub-section Veld and Grazing, Cultivation and Soil Types etc. in an attempt to group what is an unmanageably large number of closely or distantly related terms.

It must be added here that there are many words which fit into more than one of the categories so that there is inevitable overlap between some of them e.g. 31 Travel and Vehicles, much of which deals with wagon travel, and 26 Pioneering and Settlement in which the ox wagon bulks largely. In the event of such overlap a word may have more than one number preceding its definition to indicate that it belongs in several groups e.g. diesselboom 31, 26, 11. Furthermore if the word is not a noun this will be indicated by a number showing the syntactic category or word class to which it belongs e.g. inspan 31, 26, 29vb, or brak 11, 29adj.

Every effort has been made to make this a simple and workable system. For identification of category numbers in the text a 'ready reference' table of the categories 1 to 34 is provided.

NOTE: Certain words appear in the lists bracketed, and similarly numbers preceding entries may be in parentheses. Unless there is a footnote explaining why this has been done, the brackets (or parentheses) indicate that the particular word has been included in that category with certain reservations either as a rarity or else as being peripheral to it.

1. A description of the form of the entries will be found at the end of the introduction to Part II with a sample entry putu.
'READY REFERENCE TABLE'

to Categories and their numbers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Modes of Address</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>African World</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birds</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Church and State</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Church</td>
<td>4a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State</td>
<td>4b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clothing and Footwear</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creatures</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dishes and Cookery</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drinking and Smoking</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exclamations</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expressions and Idioms</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farming and Domestic animals</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Fish'</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flowers</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fruits and Vegetables</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Games, Dances, Divisions and Sport</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Health, Moods, Medicine and Witchcraft</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Historical Administration</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>House and Garden, Building and Buildings</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Human Types</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hunting, Weapons and War</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Insects'</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Landscape and Places, Topography</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Languages, Peoples and Tribes</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monetary Units and Measures</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oriental South Africa</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pioneering and Settlement</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place Names</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plants</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syntactic Categories</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trade, Mining and Law</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Travel and Vehicles</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trees and Shrubs</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weather</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Writing, Education and the Arts</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX TO CATEGCRISED SURVEY OF THE VOCABULARY

All categories 1 - 34 are referred to by number after the subjects indexed, e.g. Animal Diseases 11 refers to Farming and Domestic Animals.

1. Address, modes of
   Adjectives 29adj, 27i, 27j.
   Administration 4b, Historical 17.
   Adverbs 29adv, 27k.
   Africana 18.
   African terms 2.
       dwellings 2, 18.
       food and drinks 2, 8, 7.
       music and dancing 2, 15.
       politics 2, 4b.
       religion 2, 4a.
       tribal life 2, 20.
       tribes 23.
       witchcraft and medicine 2, 16.

2. African World
   Agriculture 11.
   Amphibians 6.
   Animal Diseases 11.
   Antiques 18.
   Appearance, Personal 16, (19).
   Architecture 18.
   Army, 20, 19.
   Articles 29red. art., 27l.
   Beasts 6.

3. Birds
   Body and Mind, states of 16.
   Building (Trade) 18.
   Buildings 18, 11, 17, 4a.
   Carnival 15.
   Caterpillars and Worms 21, 11.
   Characteristics, personal 16, 10.
   Children, games 15.
       school 34.

4. Church and State
   (4a) Church
       Church officials 4a, 19.
       Church buildings 18, 4a.

5. Clothing and Footwear
   Colloquialisms 10, 9.
   Colloquial Expressions for People 10, 19.
   Construction, Building 18.
Cookery 7.

6. Creatures
Crime 4b, 30, 2.
Crustaceans 12, 7.
Cultivation and Crops 11.
Cultures, prehistoric 34, 23.
Currency 24.
Dances 15.
Dancing, African 15, 2.
Diseases 16.
of Animals 11.

7. Dishes and Cookery
Diversions and Entertainment 15.
Domestic Animals 11.

8. Drinking and Smoking
Drugs (all types) 8.
Eastern aspects, Oriental South Africa 25.
Education 34.
Entertainment 15.

9. Exclamations and Interjections.

10. Expressions and Idioms
Expressions of time, space and amount 24, 10.
Family members 19.
Farmer, Government and the 11, 4b.

11. Farming and Domestic Animals
Fences and Fencing 18, 11.
Fighting 20.

12. Fish.

13. Flowers, see also 28, 32.
Foods, 7 14.
Footwear 5.
Freshwater fish 12.

14. Fruits and Vegetables
Fruit, wild and cultivated 14.
Furniture 18.
Game 6, 3

15. Games, Dances, Diversions and Sport
Games, Indoor and Outdoor 15.
Garden(ing) 18, (13, 28, 32).
Government 4b.
Grammar 29 Syntactic categories
10 Translated structures

Herbs 16, 28.

17. Historical Administration - also 4b.
Horses and Horsedrawn Conveyances 11, 31.
18. **House and Garden, Building and Buildings**
   Household Equipment 18.
   Houses 18, (2).

19. **Human Types**
   Humour 15.

20. **Hunting, Weapons and War**
   Idioms 10.
   Indian Terms, Clothing, Ingredients etc. 25, 7.

21. **Insects**
   Insect Pests 11, 21.
   Intensifiers 29adv, 10.
   Interjections 9.
   Interpolations 9.
   Journeys 31, 26.

22. **Landscape and Places, Topography**
   Landscape 22, 27a, 31, 26.

23. **Languages, Peoples and Tribes**
   Languages 23, 4b.
   Law 4b, 30.
   Liquor 8.
   Liquor Trade 8, 30.
   Living Things (non-human) 3, 6, 12, 21.
   Love and Lovers 15.
   Malay Terms 25.
   Mammals 6.
   Marine Life 12.
   Measures 24.
   Medicines 16, 2.
   Mercantile Law 30.
   Mind and Body, states of 16.
   Mining 30.
   Modes of Address 1.
   Modifiers 29adj, 27i, 27j.

24. **Monetary Units and Measures**
   Money and Payment 24, 11.
   Moods 16.
   Music 15.
   Musical Instruments 15, 2.
   Objects 18.
   Officials 19, 17, (Military 20).

25. **Oriental South Africa**
   Pastures and Grazing 11.
   People, 19, 10.
   Peoples 23.

26. **Pioneering and Settlement**

27. **Place Names**
   Places 22, 27.
Places of Entertainment 15, 30, 8.
Plant Diseases 11.
Plant Pests 11, 4b.

28. **Plants** (see also 11, 13, 14, 32.)
   - Police 4b
   - Politicians 4b, 19.
   - Politics 4b, 2.
   - Prehistoric Man 23, 34.
   - Prepositions 29prep, 27k.
   - Priests and Church Officials 4a, 19.
   - Pronouns and Pseudo-pronouns 29prn, 27e.
   - Pseudo-verbs 9, 10, 29vb.
   - Public Buildings 18, 4b.
   - Races 23, 4b.
   - Rainfall 33, 11.
   - Redundancies 29red.
   - Religion 4a, 2, 25.
   - Reptiles 6.
   - Roads and Traffic 31.
   - Schools 34.
   - Settlers and Settlement 26.
   - Shellfish 12.
   - Shoes 5.
   - Shrubs 32, 28.
   - Slang 10, 9, (19).
   - Smoking 8.
   - Snakes 6.
   - Spiders 21.
   - Sport 15.
   - State, the 4a, 17.
   - Stock Farming 11.
   - Students 34.
   - Supernatural 16, 2.

29. **Syntactic Categories**
   - Timber 18, 32.
   - Tools 18.
   - Topography 22, 27a.
   - Toys 15.

30. **Trade, Mining and Law**
   - Trade 30, 8.
   - Trains 31.
   - Translated Expressions 10, 29.
   - Translated words: translations appear in the etymology given with the entry.

31. **Travel and Vehicles**

32. **Trees and Shrubs**
   - Tribal Life 2.
   - Tribes 23.
University Life 34,
Vegetables 14, cooked 7.
Vehicles, Cars etc. 31.
Verbs, Verb Phrases 29vb, 27f, 27g.
Wagons 31, 11, 26.
Wagon Travel 31, 26.
Warfare 20.
Wartime Usage 20.
Weapons 20.

33. Weather
Witchcraft 16, 2.
Woods 18, 21.

34. Writing, Education and the Arts
1. **Modes of Address**

These are terms used by people addressing each other, formally and informally: white to white, black to black, white to black and black to white. Some are respectful, some friendly, some unfriendly, some abusive and one, **pula**, a form of greeting. The effect of several of these may vary with context, e.g. country Europeans might address an African as 'boy' with no idea of the offence this might give in the city, and the term 'lady' is frequently regarded as an impertinence by those unaware of its formal background. Most of these are found at 19. **Human Types, 10. Expressions and Colloquialisms or 2. African World.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Afrikaans</th>
<th>Zulu</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aia</td>
<td>kërél</td>
<td>nkosikazi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>askoek</td>
<td>koelie</td>
<td>ntombazaan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auntie</td>
<td>lady</td>
<td>ntombi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baas</td>
<td>ma-</td>
<td>ntshebe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bangbroek</td>
<td>maat, ou</td>
<td>oom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>basie</td>
<td>madala</td>
<td>ou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bhatti</td>
<td>mafuta</td>
<td>outraas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bliksem</td>
<td>makoti</td>
<td>ouboet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blikskottel</td>
<td>mema</td>
<td>ouma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boesman</td>
<td>mampara</td>
<td>oupa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boet</td>
<td>man</td>
<td>ousele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kleinboet</td>
<td>meester</td>
<td>ouus/sis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ouboet</td>
<td>meid</td>
<td>outra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boetie</td>
<td>meneer</td>
<td>pampoenkop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buti</td>
<td>mevrou</td>
<td>pellie, ou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chief</td>
<td>miesies</td>
<td>poppie [pula]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coolie</td>
<td>mijnheer</td>
<td>sell out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dikkop</td>
<td>missis</td>
<td>sisi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dominee</td>
<td>(u)mlungu</td>
<td>skat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domkop</td>
<td>mnumzane</td>
<td>smeerlap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>donder</td>
<td>mompara</td>
<td>swaer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dwaalie</td>
<td>morena</td>
<td>tannie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goodself, your</td>
<td>moruti</td>
<td>tante</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heer</td>
<td>[munt(u)]</td>
<td>tata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Here</td>
<td>mynheer</td>
<td>thing, my</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hotnot</td>
<td>nanny</td>
<td>[third person forms (qv)]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>houtkop</td>
<td>neef</td>
<td>umfundisi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td>nefie</td>
<td>umlungu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>juffrou</td>
<td>niggie</td>
<td>umnumzane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaffer</td>
<td>nkosaan</td>
<td>uncle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaffir</td>
<td>nkosi</td>
<td>vetsak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kehla</td>
<td></td>
<td>vroteier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>voetsak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>vrou</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. **African World**

The words in this category are not all taken from African languages, though many of them are. The collection contains names of customs and ceremonies, and of political and other factors in the world of the tribal and the urban African in the Republic. Origin in an African language is not a criterion for any word's inclusion here: many African names for birds (3), beasts (6) or fish (12) etc. (oribi, songololo, tollie, tsessebe, tsetse fly, damba, mfezi, sakabula, titiboya) do not belong here, nor do, as a whole, the names of peoples, countries and languages found at 23. It will be seen on the other hand that the vocabulary of the African World as it comes into the usage of English speaking South Africans of whatever colour, does not consist entirely of African language borrowings.

Examples only can be given here:

1. **The supernatural:** amadlozi, amatongo, lightning bird, tagati, mamlambo, nyanga, herbalist, sangoma, rainmaker, uhlako, dolos, witchdoctor, throw the bones, smell out, muti, muti shop, bulaparty, tikoioshe.

2. **Initiation:** abakwetha, circumcision school, circumcision dance.

3. **Tribal government and ceremonies:** Great Place, indaba, amapakati, imbonisi, izibongo, royal beast, kgotla, pitso, washspears, eat up, hlonipa, headman, beer drink.

4. **Food and Drink:** Most items of diet and drink here, to be found also at 7, 8, and 14 are from African languages (putu, puza, taloviya, madumbi, babala, amaas, govini, izindlubu, imfe) though some are not (calabash milk, uitloop, K.B., queen's tears, sour porridge, *mgqusahaan*).

5. **Modes of Address or Reference:** The category includes also modes of address and reference to Africans, usually to other Africans (sisi, bhuti, tata, mama, quise, homeboy, kehla, mafuta, madala.) There are however exceptions here: boesman to a coloured, mlungu to a white, suliman of a Muslim Indian, umabuny of the Afrikaners (Boers), amaloni of soldiers, abelungu of whites.

6. **Politics and the African World:** Part of the vocabulary of the political scene affecting the African is here (endorse out, reference book, domboek, dompas, aid-centre, pass, citizenship certificate, influx control, 'immo' Act, non-voter, sell-out.)

7. **Urban Life:** Aspects of township life of the urban African are also reflected:

Music: mbaganga, malombo, kwela, penny whistle.

Police: pick up van, kwela-kwela, blackjack.
Administration: 

Crime and Punishment: lekgotla (makgotla), tsotei, shebengu/a, amalaita, kwe taxi.

Social life: shooeens kings, queens and bongies, the stokvel parties, bigtime stokvel, tickey line stokvel, avuties and 'underground.'

Religion: Order of Ethiopia, Zionists, Donkey Church, 'Church', manyano, umfundisi, moruti, Tixo, Unkulunkulu, and

Marriage: lobola versus vat-en-sit.

There are of course numerous items which are not easily classified - some African English usages: call, 'off', sleep; African names of cities, Ecolli, Thokwini; exclamations hau, vu, mawo found at 9 and the names of weapons also at 20.

This is a limited compass in which to try to do justice to the vocabulary of the African World. However, though much is omitted, there may still be a large number of terms strange to those who never read the black press or whose everyday life is without African contacts. This collection is an attempt at a compromise between vocabulary known to those whose contact with the African world is minimal and known to those, black or white, who are immersed in it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>African</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abafazi</td>
<td>assegai</td>
<td>bones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abakwetha</td>
<td>auntie</td>
<td>bones, throw the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abelungu</td>
<td>babala</td>
<td>bongella</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>African</td>
<td>bongie</td>
<td>book pass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>African time</td>
<td>bantu beer</td>
<td>borrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-al</td>
<td>basela</td>
<td>bula party</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aid centre</td>
<td>Basutu blanket</td>
<td>Bunga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aikona</td>
<td>battle stick</td>
<td>buti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amaas</td>
<td>beadwork</td>
<td>by-and-by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amabunu</td>
<td>beast, royal</td>
<td>calabash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amadlozi</td>
<td>bechu/beshu</td>
<td>calabash milk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amadoda</td>
<td>been-to (see overseas)</td>
<td>calabash piano</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amadumbi</td>
<td>beerdrink</td>
<td>call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amagoduka</td>
<td>beshu</td>
<td>Captain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amajoni</td>
<td>bhuti</td>
<td>Church</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amalaita</td>
<td>bibi</td>
<td>circumcision school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amandla</td>
<td>bioscope</td>
<td>circumcision dance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amanzi</td>
<td>blackjack</td>
<td>citizenship certificate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amapakati</td>
<td>boardman</td>
<td>court</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amasoja</td>
<td>domboek</td>
<td>dolos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amatongo</td>
<td>dompas</td>
<td>Donkey Church</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amatungulu</td>
<td>[boetie]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.N.C.</td>
<td>bombella train</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
- 102 -

ingubu

initiation school

inkore/(i)nkona

inkesaan

inkosi

inkosikazi

insangu

intombazaan

intombi

inyanga

izibongo

izindluubu

kahle

karos

kaya

K.B.

kehla

[kerrie]

kgotla

kia

kierie

knobkierie

kraal

kraalhead

kraal, royal

kwedin

kwela

kwela-kwela

lambile strap

lapa 1 and 2

lekgotla

lightning bird

liretlo

lobola

lobola cattle

lobola system etc.

mafuta

Mahoga

maida

manggotla

makoti

makulu

mali

malombo

malombo drums

mama

mamlambo

maningi

manyano

marimba

[Mashona piano]

mawo

Mayibuye Afrika

mbaganga

mbira

mbombela

mkonto

Mkonto ka Shaka

mungu

Mungu

munzana/e

modjadji

[monkey's wedding]

moochi

morena

moruti

mother, small/big

mpundulu bird

mqomboti

mtagati

mtombo

mtombo mmela

muhle

mutu

muti

muti man

muti shop

(u)mutsha

ndambola

nd.blishi

ngoma

ngoma dancing

(i)ngoni

ngubu
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Xhosa</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nipinyane/a</td>
<td>scoff</td>
<td>throw the bones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i)nkona</td>
<td>sell-out</td>
<td>tickie line</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i)nkosaan</td>
<td>sgmfa(a)ne</td>
<td>tikoloshe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i)nkosi</td>
<td>Shaka's Spear</td>
<td>Tixo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i)nkosikazi</td>
<td>skaf-tin</td>
<td>[ljanga]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[non-black]</td>
<td>shubeen</td>
<td>tokoloshe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-voter</td>
<td>shubeen king</td>
<td>too good/much</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i)ntombazaan</td>
<td>shebeen party</td>
<td>township</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i)ntombi</td>
<td>shebeen queen</td>
<td>township life</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ntshebe</td>
<td>shebeen trade</td>
<td>township jazz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mu</td>
<td>shimlyane</td>
<td>tribesman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nyanga</td>
<td>shu shu</td>
<td>tshwala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'off'</td>
<td>sisi</td>
<td>tsotsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Order of Ethiopia</td>
<td>skebenga/u</td>
<td>tsotsism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ousie</td>
<td>skipper</td>
<td>tula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[panga]</td>
<td>skokkiaan queen</td>
<td>twala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass</td>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>U.B.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass laws</td>
<td></td>
<td>ufufunyana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass burning etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td>uhlaka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peetsho</td>
<td>small father/mother</td>
<td>umfaan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pelile</td>
<td>smell out</td>
<td>umfazi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>penny whistle</td>
<td>Spear, the</td>
<td>umlungu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>piccanin</td>
<td>spears, to wash</td>
<td>umnumzane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[pick. up van]</td>
<td>stad/stat</td>
<td>umthagati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pirate taxi</td>
<td>stamp block</td>
<td>[umzimbeto]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pitso</td>
<td>stamper</td>
<td>umfundisi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potwana</td>
<td>stentreim</td>
<td>unkulunkulu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[pula]</td>
<td>[stokfel]</td>
<td>[underground]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[pundus] *</td>
<td>stokvel</td>
<td>uitloop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>putu</td>
<td>storosha</td>
<td>usutu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puza</td>
<td>[straight]</td>
<td>utywala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>queen, shebeen</td>
<td>suka</td>
<td>vat-en-sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(queen's) tears</td>
<td>suliman</td>
<td>vat-en-sit woman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rainmaker</td>
<td>(m)tagathi</td>
<td>vat-en-sit marriage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rain queen</td>
<td>[takes me up to ...]</td>
<td>wash spears, to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red</td>
<td>taloviya</td>
<td>witchdoctor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reference book</td>
<td>tata</td>
<td>worry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ritual murder/killing tears, queen's</td>
<td></td>
<td>yebo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sala kahle</td>
<td>tears of the King of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sangoma</td>
<td>England</td>
<td>Zimbabwe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scale</td>
<td>thekwini</td>
<td>Zimbabwean</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* See at takes me up to ...
3. **Birds**

The list which follows contains the names of those birds included in this work. These have been deliberately confined to names commonly encountered in everyday life, the press or non-specialist texts. A detailed treatment of South African bird-life is the province of the experienced ornithologist rather than of the lexicographer. I am indebted to Mr. C. J. Skead of Grahamstown for his help in the compilation of the list of scientific names of the birds below, which has been made from the most up-to-date check lists available. (Note: many of the scientific names in the text itself have been taken from older sources and have been replaced in the literature of ornithological science by those given below.)

**aasvoël** Gypaetidae fam. Gypa coprotheres (G. kolbi etc.)

**hadedah** Bostrychia hagedash

**hammerkop** Scopus umbretta

**berghaar** Terathopius ecaudatus

**honey guide/indicator** Indicatoridae fam.

**bergsyisie** see dikbek; also Serinus alario

**Jacky Hangman/Hanger** Lanius collaris

**bleshoender** Fulica cristata

**Jan Fiskaal** Lanius collaris

**blou valk** see *valk*

**Jan Groenstjie** Nectarinia famosa

**blou kraan** Anthropoides paradisea

**Jan Pierwiet** Malaconotus zeylonus

**bokmakierie** Malaconotus zeylonus

**Johnny Hangman** Lanius collaris

**bonstuf** Columba guinea

**kakelaar** Phoeniculus purpureus

**bosluisvoël** Ardeola ibis

**kaffir crane** Gruidae fam. Balaeniceps rex

**bromvoël** Bucorvus leadbeateri

**kaffir finch/vink** Euplectes spp.

**bully** See dikbek

**kalkoentjie** Macronyx capensis

**butcherbird** Lanius collaris

**ka(r)nallie** Lanius collaris

**canaribyter** Lanius collaris

**kiersie** Zosterops spp.

**commando voël** Burhinus capensis

**kiesogtie** Zosterops spp.

**coucal** Centropus spp.

**kiewietjie** Vanelius coronatus

**dassie vanger** Aquila verreauxii

**k( n) orhaan** Otididae fam.

**diedrik** Chrysococcyx caprius

**kokkiewiet** Malacocotus zeylonus

**dikbek** Serinus sulphuratus

**koornvreter** Passer melanurus

**duikop** Burhinus spp.

**korhaan** Otididae fam.

**duiker** Phalacrocoracidae fam.

**koorvoël** Plocepasser spp.

**fiscal shrike** Lanius collaris

**kouvoël** Aquila rapax

**fink** Placeidae fam.

**kraai** Corvidae fam.

**flap** Euplectes progne

**kraai, withals** Corvus albigularis

**geelbek** (duck) Anas undulata

**kraalogie** Zosterops spp.

**glasogie** Zosterops spp.

**koornvoël** Plocepasser spp.

**go-away bird** Corythaixoides concolor

**kwêvoël** Corythaixoides concolor
laksman  |  Lanius collaris
lammergeyer |  Gypaetus barbatus
lammervanger |  Aquilidae fam.
locust bird |  Ciconiidae fam.  see also springkana-voël
loerie, bush |  Trogonidae fam.  Narina trogon

grey  |  Knysna  |  Musophagidae fam.
vlei  |  Centropus superciliosus burchellii  see rainbird

mahem  |  Balcarica pavonina  |  regulorum
malgas  |  Sulidae fam.  Sula bassana capensis
monkey bird  |  Phoeniculus purpureus
mossie  |  Passer melanurus
mousebird  |  Coliidae fam.
groot muisvoël  |  Corythaixoides concolor  (kwêvoël)
Namaqua dove  |  Oena capensis
Namaqua partridge  |  Pterocles namaqua  (sand grouse)
Piet-my-vrou  |  Cuculus solitarius
pou(w) Otididae fam.  gompou  (Kori bustard)Otis kori
rainbird  |  Centropus superciliosus burchellii
roodebekkie)  |  Estrilda astrild
rooibekkie  |  Euplectes progne
rooi vink  |  Euplectes orix
sakabula  |  Euplectes progne
secretary bird  |  Sagittarius serpentarius
spookvoël  |  Malaconotus hypopyrrhus
spreeu  |  Sternaidae fam.
sprikanvoël, klein  |  Glareola noroëmanni
sprikanvoël, groot  |  Ciconiidae fam.
stompstertjie (Crombec)  |  Sylviaetta rufescens
strandloper  |  Charadriidae fam.
sugarbird  |  Promeropidae fam.
sukerbekkie)  |  Nectarinidae fam.
sunbird  |  Serinus sulphuratus
sysie, berg  |  Namidadae fam.
tarentaal  |  Namidadae fam.
tickbird  |  see bosluisvoël
tingtinkie  |  Sylviidae fam.
titihoya  |  Vanelhus melanopterus
toppie  |  Pycnonotus spp. inc.
toppie  |  Pycnonotus capensis
'tumfundial  |  Corvus albigularis  see withalskraai
valk/kie, blou  |  Elanus caeruleus
dwerp (pygmy) Polio-  |  Pycnonotus capensis
hiceryx semitorquatus

del  |  Falco biarmicus
rooi  |  Falco tinnunculus
vink  |  Ploceidae fam.
vlei leorie  |  Centropus superciliosus burchellii

-vœl, bosluis  |  Ardea ibis
-vœl, brom  |  Bucorvus leadbeateri
-vœl, kommando  |  Burhinus capensis
-vœl, sprin-  |  see sprin-voël, Ciconiidae fam.  and
nkaan  |  Glaeolidae fam.

-vœl, kwê  |  Corythaixoides concolor

-vœl, spook  |  Malaconotus hypopyrrhus
water fiskaal  |  Laniatorus hyperus
weaver bird  |  Ploceidae fam.
white eye  |  Zosterops spp.
widow bird  |  Vidua (Ploceidae fam.)  or  Euplectes spp.

witolgie  |  see white eye

fam. = family
spp. = species
Category 4. **Church and State**, is for convenience divided into 4a. *(Church)* and 4b. *(State)*

4a. Church contains a mixed collection of terms including names of certain denominations, of priests and other officials concerned with the Church, and of Church buildings, business and dress. Apart from the single Jewish term **Reverend** all these have to do with Christian Churches. Some Islamic terms will be found at 25. **Oriental South Africa** but Hindu terms are omitted. African Separatist Churches such as the Order of Ethiopia, the 'Donkey Church' and the Zionists appear here, but any words belonging to ancestor worship among Africans are at 2. **African World**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Actuarius</th>
<th>Indian Reformed Church</th>
<th>N. H. K.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Baruti</td>
<td>Kerk, the</td>
<td>Order of Ethiopia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Booke vat</td>
<td>Kerkbode</td>
<td>ouderling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Church'</td>
<td>Kerkhuis/house</td>
<td>pastorie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Church of the Province</td>
<td>Kerkraad</td>
<td>Political Commissioner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colenso Church</td>
<td>Konsistorie</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diaken</td>
<td>Koster</td>
<td>predikant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dominee</td>
<td>Manel</td>
<td>prekestoel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donkey Church</td>
<td>Manyano</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dopper Kerk/Church</td>
<td>Meneer (dominee)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. R. C.</td>
<td>Moruti</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dutch Reformed Church</td>
<td>Nagmaal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethiopia, Order of [gaatjieponner]</td>
<td>Nagmaalhuis/house</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[gatjaponner]</td>
<td>Nagmaal tent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gemeente</td>
<td>Nagmaal wine/wyn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hervormde Kerk</td>
<td>Nederduits Gereformeerde Kerk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Huisbesoek</td>
<td>N. G. K.</td>
<td>Zionists</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[ colloquialisms ]

1. As are African names for God.
4. Church and State

4b. State

This category contains much of the political vocabulary of the present day, and terms relating to Government and basic law. Divisions under headings are tentatively suggested and it must be stressed that this is only one way of treating this material.

These divisions are as follows and there are naturally overlaps between some of them:

1. Government: Central and local, old and new.

This contains the names of certain state officials, certain acts and certain central policies of Government in South Africa, and national organisations such as the army, the railways etc.

Administrator, Alderman, apartheid, grand/petty, banning order, bannings, black spot, Book of Life, Border Area, Border Industry, Border status, B.O.S.S. bill, Citizenship certificate, classification, classify 1, classify 2, dam, deproclaim, District, District road, Division, Divisional Council, [droudy], exit permit, general dealer's licence, [Government flour, Government sugar], Grondwet, Group Areas Act, Group Area, homeland, hotel, hunting season, [I.D.B. Act], Indian Council, Influx control, Immorality Act, job reservation, [koffiehag], mailboat/ship, -master, metrical, multinational, National Road, National Service, Order of Good Hope, [pasbrief], pass laws, Pretoria, Raad, raadsheer, Republic, the, reclassification, reclassify, release, resettlement, resettlement camp, [Reserves], retel, R.S.A., S.A.B.C., S.A.B.S., S.A.R., separate development, State President, Suppression of Communism Act, U.D.F., Union, the, [V.O.C.], Volksraad, X.D.C., [Z.A.R.], zone, rezone.

2. Law

A small division, this contains aspects of the law as it pertains to the individual (marriage, wills, servitudes, sales) and not to the State as a whole.

Ante nuptial contract, bond, community of property, Diamond Trade Act, kinderbewyys, kustingbrief, mijnacht, -pad (trekpad, rypad, voetpad), rouwkoop, twala, trek pad, uitkoop, voetpad, voetstoots.

3. Organisations

The names of State and non-State organisations appear here whether political or otherwise.

4. Politicians

Official and non-official designations for politicians make up this division, some items are therefore colloquial.

Bepoeg, [betjening], bloedsap, broeder, herstigte, [huisbesoek], jabloer, Nat., opstoker, Prog., remskoen, Sap, smelter, samesmelter, volksleier, verkrampte, verligte, 'Young Turk' (now Reformist), noggie, [Zoo train], [mbongo].

5. Police

Designations for different branches of the police are here, and some of the vocabulary of what might be called 'Crime and Punishment.'

Bandit, blackjack, bloubaadjie, blourokkie, Boere, B.O.S.S., Breakwater, dagga offence, farm prison, I.D.B., klopgag, kwela-kwela, pass offences, pick-up van, prison farm, Robben Island, S.A.P., S.B., Special Branch, tronk, Zarp.

6. The Races

These words are simply official designations of certain race groups in South Africa.

Baster, blanke, Coloured, European, nation, nie-blanke, non-European, non-White, White.

7. Politics and the African

Much of this material appears at 2. African World: these are terms concerning aspects of government policy as they affect Africans in the Republic.

Aid centre, A.N.C., apartheid (grand/petty), B.A.A.B., B.A.D., Bantu Affairs, Bantu Education, Bantustan, blackjack, black spot, boardman, boekpass, captain, citizenship certificate, Court, dombok, dompas, endorse out, exit permit, Group Area, Group Areas Act, headman, homeland, homeland leaders, policy etc., hut tax, job reservation, kwela kwela, location, Mkonto ka Shaka, numumzane/a, pass, pass laws, reclassify, reclassification, Reserves, resettlement, resettlement area, resettlement camp, separate development, Shaka's Spear, township council, trekkpass, twala, U.B.C., X.D.C., Zimbabwe.

8. Government and the Farmer

The terms here appear at 11. Farming and Domestic Animals but are collected at this point to indicate certain government concerns which are specifically with the farmer.

animal unit, boeteboes, farm prison, Land Bank, plant migration, proclaimed weed, skut, small/large stock unit, stock reduction scheme, stock unit, Ag labour system, [the Rinderpest].
9. Language

A few terms associated with bilingualism: bilingual, the Taal, taaltoets, Taal Beweging (Language Movement).

10. Politics and the Emotions

The terms in this division are all words or thoughts provocative of emotions whether patriotic or not; there are symbols like Die Stem, the Vierkleur and the kruithoring: 'battles long ago', Anglo Boer War, Vryheidsoorlog, Opstand; national identity summed up in the term Volk and its compounds, Afrikanerdom and Afrikanerskap; and trouble-making concepts like swartgevaar, baaaskap, kragdadigheid, boerenaat, stemvee, broedertwis and 'laager'.

Anglo Boer War, baaaskap, Boer, boerenaat, broedertwis, domboek, dompas, Eendrag Maak Mag, 'gogga', khaki gevaar, kragdadigheid, kruithoring, laager, Opstand, opstokery, overseas interference, remskoen politics, rooiligevaar, Roomse gevaar, standpoint, Die Stem, stemvee, strydtag, swartgevaar, [toenadering-] uitlander, Vierkleur, Volk, Volkseie, Volkslied, Volkstreëme, Volkswil, Voortrekkers, Vryheidsoorlog, Vrystaat.
Group Areas Act  
headman (kraal head)  
hersigste  
H.N.P.  
homeland  
homeland leaders etc.  
hotel  
huisbesoek  
hunting season  
hut tax  
H.S.R.C.  
I.D.B.  
I.D.B. Act  
Immorality Act  
Indian Council  
Indobond  
influx control  
jabber  
job reservation  
khaki gevaar  
kinderbewys  
klopgag  
koffiegeld  
kragdadig  
kragdadigheid  
kruiwering  
kustingbrief  
wela-wela  
lager  
Land Bank  
location  
mailboat/ship  
master  
mongo  
migration  
Mkonto ka Shaka  
mmunzane  
multinational  
mynpacht  
Nat  
Nat en Sap  
Nation  
White nation etc.  
National Road  
National Service  
nie-blanke  

Non-European  
Non-White  
Noodhulpliga  
O.B.  
Opstand  
opstoker  
Order of Good Hope  
Ossewa Brandwag  
overseas interference  
overheid  
pad  
trek-pad  
ry-pad  
voet-pad  
[pasbrief]  
pass  
pass laws  
pass offences  
Permanent Force (P.F.)  
pick-up van  
plant migration  
Pretoria  
prison farm  
proclaimed weed  
Prog.  
Raad  
Volksraad  
Raadsheer  
Rapportryers  
reclassify  
reclassification  
reference book  
release  
remskoen  
remskoen politics  
remskoen party  
Republic, the  
Reserves  
resettlement  
resettlement camp  
resettlement area  
resettlement removal  
township  
township council  
[ Rinderpest, the ]  
Robben Island  
Taal, the  
Taalbeweging  
Taalfees  
Taaltoets  
Taalstryd  
Territorial Authority  
toenadering  
togt labour  
togt system  

roomse gevaar  
rotel  
rouwkoop  
R.S.A.  
Ruiterwag  
S.A.B.C.  
S.A.B.S.  
Sakekamer  
S.A.P.  
sap, bloedsap  
S.A.R.  
S.B.  
separate development  
Shaka's Spear  
skut  
small stock unit  
smelter  
samesmelter  
Spear, the  
Special Branch  
SU-stand  
standpoint  
State President  
Stem, die  
stemvee  
stock reduction scheme  
stock, animal unit  
Stormjaer  
stryddag  
Suppression of Communism Act  
swart gevaar  
Taal, the  
Taalbeweging  
Taalfees  
Taaltoets  
Taalstryd  
Territorial Authority  
toenadering  
togt labour  
togt system  
township  
township council  
trek-pad  
trek pass
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Afrikaans</th>
<th>Dutch</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tronk</td>
<td>twala</td>
<td>U.B.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>twala</td>
<td>tweetalig</td>
<td>U.D.F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uitlander</td>
<td>Uitlander</td>
<td>Uitlander</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Union, the</td>
<td>United Party</td>
<td>Union, the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>U.P.</td>
<td>United Party</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verkrampte</td>
<td>verligte</td>
<td>verkrampte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vierkleur</td>
<td>[ V.O.C. ]</td>
<td>[ V.O.C. ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>voetpad</td>
<td>Volkslied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Volk</td>
<td>Volkswil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Volkslied</td>
<td>Voortrekkers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Volksraad</td>
<td>Voortrekker Monument, victory etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Volkswil</td>
<td>[ Vryheidsoorlog ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Voortrekkers</td>
<td>[ Vryheidsoorlog ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Voortrekkers</td>
<td>Voortrekkers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Voortrekker Monument</td>
<td>Voortrekker Monument, victory etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[ Vryheidsoorlog ]</td>
<td>[ Vryheidsoorlog ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vrystaat</td>
<td>Vrystaat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>White</td>
<td>White</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X.D.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Young Turks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Z.A.R.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Zarp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>zoggie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>zone, re-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Zoo train</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Zimbabwe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Zuid Afrikaansche</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Republiek</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5. Clothing and Footwear

This category contains the names of various garments, shoes, and the materials used for their manufacture (the voorchitz and linnebaai of earlier times, or the modern Swazi Print or Swakara). It also includes the terms used in South Africa to refer to clothing of particular kind or significance (kisklere, Nagmaal jacket/suit/clothes, morning gown, skolliebroek, slip-slops etc.). Listed here too are those terms relating to African, Indian and Malay dress which have been included in the text: most of the African terms appear also in 2. African World and the Indian and Malay words in 25. Oriental South Africa.

- African print
  - agterkaros
  - baadjie
  - Basuto blanket
  - beach thongs
  - beadwork
  - bechu
  - becreeping cap
  - beshu
  - bloudruk
  - broek
  - broekies
  - shu-shu broekies

- [Bushveld Ben]
  - champal
  - choil
  - [coolie pink]
  - costie/coozie
  - costume
  - crackers
  - doek
  - kopdoek
  - Duitse sis

- German print
  - girdle of famine
  - gown
  - morning gown
  - headdress
  - hunger belt
  - ingubu
  - jas
  - [Job's tears/krale]
6. Creatures

The list which follows contains a selection of the names of those living creatures commonly known in South Africa; names which are apt to occur in non-specialist literature or the press. They include mammals, reptiles and amphibians and no attempt has been made at a classification which would more properly be the province of the naturalist than that of the lexicographer. I am indebted to Mr. C.J. Skead of Grahamstown for his help in the compilation of the list of names below which has been made from the most up-to-date check-lists available.

(Note: In many instances the scientific names given in the text for category 6. items are from earlier sources and have been superseded by those given here.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English Name</th>
<th>Scientific Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-aap</td>
<td>Orycteropus afer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aardvark</td>
<td>Orycteropus afer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aardwolf</td>
<td>Proteles cristatus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>akkedis</td>
<td>Proctolophus aspinus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antbear</td>
<td>Orycteropus afer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bakkop (slang)</td>
<td>See ringed cobra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baviaan</td>
<td>Papio ursinus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bergadder</td>
<td>Bits atropos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>berg haas</td>
<td>Pedetes capensis (cafer)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blesbok</td>
<td>Damaliscus dorcas phillipsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blesmol</td>
<td>Georychus capensis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blouaap</td>
<td>Cercopithecus aesthiops</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bloubok</td>
<td>Cephalophus monticola</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blue buck</td>
<td>Cephalophus monticola</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bok:</td>
<td>Damaliscus dorcas phillipsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bles</td>
<td>Damaliscus dorcas phillipsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blou</td>
<td>Damaliscus monticola</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bonte</td>
<td>Damaliscus dorcas dorcas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bos</td>
<td>Tragelaphus scriptus sylvaticus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pronk</td>
<td>See springbok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spring</td>
<td>Antidorcas marsupialis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ribbok, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bontebok</td>
<td>See bok, bonte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boommassie</td>
<td>Dendrohyrax arboreus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boomslang</td>
<td>Dispholidus typus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bosbok</td>
<td>Tragelaphus scriptus sylvaticus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bosvark</td>
<td>Potomocherus porcus klopototamus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bushbaby</td>
<td>Galago spp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bushbuck</td>
<td>Tragelaphus scriptus sylvaticus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brulpadda</td>
<td>Ptyasmus adspersus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cape cobra</td>
<td>Naja nivea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>das, klip</td>
<td>Procavia capensis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dassie</td>
<td>Procaviidae fam.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dik-dik</td>
<td>Madogua kirki damarenis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diving goat</td>
<td>See duiker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duiker</td>
<td>Sylvicapra grimmia ( genus Cephalophus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eland</td>
<td>Taurotragus oryx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geel meerkat</td>
<td>See meerkat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gamsbok</td>
<td>Oryx gazella</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gharretjie</td>
<td>See meerkat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gnus</td>
<td>See wildebeest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>graatjie meerkat</td>
<td>See meerkat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>green mamba</td>
<td>Dendroaspis angusticeps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>groen mamba</td>
<td>Dendroaspis angusticeps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grysbok</td>
<td>Raphicerus melanotis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hartebees</td>
<td>Alcelaphus buselaphus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hasie</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impala</td>
<td>Aepyceros melampus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>janblom</td>
<td>Breviceps parva</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kamaan</td>
<td>See leguaan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kanna</td>
<td>See eland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kat, rooi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muske(1)jaat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[kommetjiegaat]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>klipspringer</td>
<td>Ooreotragus oroctragus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kogelmander,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bloukop</td>
<td>Agama atra</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Also Hippotragus leucophaeus
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animal</th>
<th>Scientific Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kommetjiekat</td>
<td>Atilax paludinosus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kudu, koedoe</td>
<td>Tragelaphus strepsiceros</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kwagga, kwakka</td>
<td>See quagga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leguaan, likkewaan</td>
<td>Varanus niloticus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(water leguaan)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>V. albigularis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(rock leguaan)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mamba, green</td>
<td>Dendroaspis angusticeps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mamba, black</td>
<td>D. polylepis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meerkat</td>
<td>Cape Ground Squirrel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Xerus inauris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stokstert</td>
<td>Suricata suricatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>graatjie</td>
<td>See stokstert meerkat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Suricata suricatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yellow/red</td>
<td>Cynictis penicillata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mefi</td>
<td>Naja nivea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-muis</td>
<td>Ictonyx striatus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Mustelidae fam.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muishond</td>
<td>Genetta tigrina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Genetta spp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muske(l)aat kat</td>
<td>Galago spp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Galago moholi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nagapie</td>
<td>Ourebia ourebi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oribi</td>
<td>Xenopus laevis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>platanna</td>
<td>Antidorcas marsupialis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bok, springbok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pronkbo    (springbok)</td>
<td>Reebok, ribbok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quagga</td>
<td>Equus quagga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ratel</td>
<td>Mellivora capensis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reebok, rhebok,</td>
<td>Felea capreolus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ribbok</td>
<td>vael rhe/re/ribbok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vaal rhe/re/ribbok</td>
<td>Redunca</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fulvorufula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rietbok</td>
<td>Redunca arundinum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hemachatus haemachatus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rooibok</td>
<td>See impala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Aepyceros melampus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rooikat</td>
<td>Felis caracal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rooilip</td>
<td>Crotophops pictus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>hotambalia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sassaby</td>
<td>See tessebe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seacow</td>
<td>Hippopotamus amphibius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

fam. = family

app. = species
7. Dishes and Cookery

This category includes the names of traditional meat and fish dishes, cakes, sweetmeats, conserves, puddings, pies, types of porridge, vegetable or rice dishes, dried or pickled meat or fish, and beverages, as well as some Indian and Malay dishes. On the whole what might be termed the 'raw ingredients', edible fish, game, fruit and vegetables, are not to be found here: these are at 12. Fish, 6. Creatures, 3. Birds and at 14. Fruit and Vegetables (Domestic animals are at 11).

Processed ingredients such as mealie meal, mealie rice, maizena, kuni meal, boermeal etc. and cuts of meat, are included, as are certain Indian spices and ingredients usually best known in Natal. These appear again at 25. Oriental South Africa, as do the dishes, condiments and curries of Indian and Malay origin, (atjar, biriani, blatjang, kalya, halleem, goolab jambo, samoosa) except for those like osieties and bobotie which have been taken into South African English and into Afrikaans.

amaas
angels' food
arad
arbrood
askoek
atjar
bake
bakoond
begraafniersys
biltong
beef biltong
Cape biltong
game biltong
osrich biltong
springbok biltong etc.
biriani
blatjang
bobotie
boerebeskuit
boeretroos
boerewors
boermeel
bokkems/oms
bolo
borrie
boud
'boy's meat'

braai
braai ribbetje
braaivleis
bread/s
bredie
tomato bredie
spinach bredie
hotnotskool bredie
wateruintjie bredie
breyani
buck fat
bunny chow
burpee
bush tea
butter bread
butter chilli
butter
household butter
table butter
calabash milk
Cape biltong
'Capers' tea
carbonaadjie
chana flour
chillie bite
cooldrink
craytail
dennepit/pip
derms
dhai
dhol/dhal
dhunia
doodgooi
elachi
fat cake
fish oil
frikkadel
garam masala
geelrys
ghurum masala
ghee
goolab jambo
government flour
government sugar
gram flour
green mealie bread
guarri honey
guarri tea
halleem
honeycake
hottentot's tea
household butter
Indian parsley
- 116 -

ingelede vis
jeero
kaaings
kaffir tea
kalya
karbonaadjie
karreemoer
kafkop
kirimoer
klinker
koeksister
konfyt
moskonfyt
naartjie konfyt
ostrich biltong
ostrich egg
kop-en-pootjies
padkos
veldkos etc.
kreef, potted
krmmeipap
kuni meal
maagbom
maas
maaskaas
mabela(meal)
maizena
masala
garam/ghurum
masala
masoor/musoor
kuni meal
mealie meal
mealie
green mealie
kaboe mealies
mealie rice
mebos
meelbol
melksnysels
melktert
methli
mielie pap
milt

misbriedie
mithal
mooes
monk, fillets of
mootjie
mos-
moskonfyt
mosbolletjie
mosbeskuit
mtombo
naan
naartjie konfyt
niggerball
obletjie
ostrich biltong
ostrich egg
ou-vrou-onder-die-kombers
padkos
pannekoek
pap
krummelpap
mielie/mealie pap
mielie lmeali e pap
peach leather
pekelaar
pens-en-pootjies
perskesmeer
pickled fish
[pikkie]
pit
denne/dannepit
poiffertjie
puri
putu
rations, 'rats'
rabbitie
braaibrabbitjie
soutrabbitjie
rooibostee
roosterkoek
roti
saamie
sambal
samoosa
samp
sarmie/y
sasaties
scab
scare
scuff
semels
sheepstail fat
skaf
skilpadpastei
skirting
skof
skyfe
slap chips
smeerperske
smoor
smoorvis
smoor chicken
snoeksmoor
snikkie
snoek
snoekpekelaar
snoor
snyels
soetkoekies
somoosa
soojee
som
sosaties
sour porridge
sousboontjies
souskluitjies
sout-
soutappelkoos
soutappie
soutribbetjie
spek
spek strips
stamp mealies
stormja(gler)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stywepap</th>
<th>Teg-water konfyt</th>
<th>Vleispastei</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sugar beans</td>
<td>Toutjies</td>
<td>Waatlemoenkonfyt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suikerbrood</td>
<td>Toutjiesvleis</td>
<td>Waterblommetjie bredie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suurdeeg</td>
<td>Trask-ox</td>
<td>Wateruintjie bredie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suurpap</td>
<td>Treksel</td>
<td>Wors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table butter</td>
<td>Tuj</td>
<td>Boerewors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tammeletjie</td>
<td>Uitloop</td>
<td>Yellow rice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tammeletjie rol(l)</td>
<td>[veldkos]</td>
<td>Zeekoe spek</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Tea -

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bush tea</th>
<th>Verkoek(ie)</th>
<th>Braaivleis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rooibos. tee</td>
<td>Vleis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tea water/teewater</td>
<td>pap-en-vleis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Spelling forms of Indian words are variable: one or two variants have been given where available.
8. Drinking and Smoking

This category contains the names, standard and colloquial, of different types of liquor, home-brewed or bottled, African and European.

Terms from this group connected with the liquor trade (bottle, store, off sales, canteen, shebeen, stokwel, beerhall, pagter) appear also at 30. Trade, Mining and Law, and most of the liquor containers or measures here are also at 24. Monetary Units and Measures, from the massive anker, leaguer, stokvat and aum to the bomb, straight, half jack, scale and nipinyane.

The vocabulary of over-indulgence of which most is at 16. Health, Moods, Medicines and Witchcraft (nadors, babelas(alas), horries and reg-maker) and of drinking (gesondheid!, sundowner, sluk, soppie and dop) all have a place here, as do odd items concerned with brewing (uitloop, ntombo, kareemoer).

Smoking, from boer tobacco, Magaliesberg or twak, in a calabash pipe to the stompies and surreptitious skuffie/skiffie of the schoolboy, and the African gwasi is reflected here, as is some of the terminology of smoking connected with the drug culture (dagga, insangu, boom, malpitte, dagga pips, dagga zolls).

[Note: most names of African-type drinks and African names for European-style liquor will also be found at 2, African World.]

advokaat ~ canteen
aeroplane ~ keeper
ai-ai ~ wine
anker ~ Cape
aum ~ brandy
babelas ~ wine
bangie(s) ~ smoke
Bantu beer ~ Constantia
Barberton ~ steen ~
beershall ~ Frontignac ~
bi-ah ~ red, white ~
boer ~ wine
' ~ brandy
tobacco ~ dagga
wine/wyn ~ zolls
bomb ~ pips
boom ~ smoking
tea ~ dop(pie)
bottle store ~ dop brandy
brandewyn ~ dop-en-dam
brandywine ~ gavini/govini
buchu brandy ~ gesondheid
calabash pipe ~ gologo
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>govini</td>
<td>pontac</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>green/groen mamba</td>
<td>puza</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gwaai</td>
<td>reggie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha-ja</td>
<td>regmaker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>half jack</td>
<td>scale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hanepoot</td>
<td>sgomfaan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heuningbier</td>
<td>shebeen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honeybeer</td>
<td>~ king</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horries</td>
<td>~ queen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insangu</td>
<td>~ party</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jack, half</td>
<td>~ trade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jan Groentjie</td>
<td>shimiyaan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jerepigo, white, red</td>
<td>skokkiaan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaffir beer</td>
<td>skuiifie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaffir tobacco</td>
<td>skyfie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kareemoer</td>
<td>sluk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K.B.</td>
<td>sopie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kimberley Club</td>
<td>square face</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kirimoer</td>
<td>steen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kudu milk</td>
<td>stokvel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K.W.V.</td>
<td>stokvel party</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leager</td>
<td>tickey line/tiekie line stokvel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lecting</td>
<td>big time stokvel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>madolo</td>
<td>stompie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magaliesberg (tobacco)</td>
<td>straight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mahewu</td>
<td>stukvat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mahog(a)</td>
<td>sundowner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maiza</td>
<td>tears, (queens)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malpitte</td>
<td>tickey beer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mampoer</td>
<td>tiger's milk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marula/maroela beer</td>
<td>tot system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meer, karee</td>
<td>tshwala/tywala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mqomboti</td>
<td>twak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mtombo</td>
<td>uitloop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~ mmela</td>
<td>'underground'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nadors</td>
<td>utywala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nagmaal wyn/wine</td>
<td>vaaljapie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ndambola</td>
<td>vaatjie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nipinyana/e</td>
<td>van der Hum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>off sales</td>
<td>voorloop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~ department</td>
<td>withblits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orange wine</td>
<td>zoll, 1, 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pagter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peach brandy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pinotage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
9. Exclamations and Interjections

This category contains the common exclamations of surprise, pain, disbelief, derision, sympathy, disapproval, distaste and warning used among all races in South Africa.

Included are forms of greeting and farewell, kom binne, pula, go well, stay well, cheers, hamba kahle, sala kahle (huis toe), ry versigtig, mooi loop, totsiens: of savage dismissal, hamba, loop, voetsek, and of jubilation, Vrystaat, nog 'n piep, amandla, mindae.

Not strictly interjections are the question tags - perhaps more properly 'interpolations' - nê?, not so?, is it?, isn't it? and the words and phrases used for emphasis as true as God, so wragtie, I'm telling you, so waar, nogal. Some probably originate in blasphemies (Magtig, allemagtig, jislaaik, Yessus, Here) but no 'swear words' as such are listed here.

aandag as it? shame
ag/ach isn't it? sies
aikona ja siestog
allemagtig ja-nee sis
allewereld jislaaik skande
amandla joking, you're so waar
bakgat kahle so wragtie waar
bliksom kom binne stadig
cheers loop stay well
dankie maak gou suka
eina magtig/magtie telling you, I'm
enkosi man Tixo
foetog mawo tjiers
foot, his Mayibuye Afrika totsiens
footsack mindae tough tackle
ga mooi loop true as God
gesondheid nê tula
go well nee, ja- twak
hamba [nkosi] usutu
hamba kahle nogal
hau nog 'n piep voe(r)tsék
Here not so? voet, se
hey [ntshebe] Vrystaat
hokaai oppas wag 'n bietjie
hoor hoor opskud weg is ek
hou moed pas op wragtie
hou links pula
hou regs ry versigtig
hou jou bek salani kahle yebo
huistoe sa yes-no
inkosi se voet Yessus/as
yu/yo
10. **Expressions, Idioms and Slang**

This category contains an assemblage of colloquial and slang items, including some expressions which are carried over, in translation, from Afrikaans. There are also slang or colloquial modes of address or reference some of which are at 1. Modes of Address and 19. Human Types and a number of phrases which are linguistically 'mixed' e.g. finish(ed) and klaar, moenie panic nie.

Apart from a list of translated expressions, mostly from Afrikaans, which precedes the full alphabetical list, there has been no attempt at classification of what appears to be too heterogeneous to be profitably divided.

**Translations or transliterations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective with infinitive</th>
<th>Hope so, don't</th>
<th>Plan, to make a</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>all two</td>
<td>howl</td>
<td>play-play</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>already</td>
<td>is it?</td>
<td>propped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-and-them</td>
<td>isn't it?</td>
<td>rather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bag friends</td>
<td>joking, you're</td>
<td>rather very</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bell</td>
<td>just now</td>
<td>ride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bite one's teeth</td>
<td>lend</td>
<td>ride flat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* borrow</td>
<td>make a plan</td>
<td>road, in the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>busy</td>
<td>must</td>
<td>road, out of the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>busy with</td>
<td>negative, uses of</td>
<td>scandal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* call</td>
<td>nerves</td>
<td>scare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can't complain</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come right</td>
<td>on my/your etc.</td>
<td>shine, through</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come to hand</td>
<td></td>
<td>show through</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come/came there</td>
<td></td>
<td>small little</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deadstill</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doesn't want to</td>
<td>never</td>
<td>so a little</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>so, or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excuse me</td>
<td>not so</td>
<td>so long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>family</td>
<td>now</td>
<td>so size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>far</td>
<td>now now</td>
<td>splinter new</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>farm, the</td>
<td>old fashioned</td>
<td>standpoint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>farm with</td>
<td>Old Year's Night * stay well</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>only</td>
<td>stick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>full of</td>
<td>on the moment</td>
<td>stick away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>otherside</td>
<td>stick fast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goodie</td>
<td>otherwise</td>
<td>stick on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* go well</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have to</td>
<td>pack in</td>
<td>still</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hell in</td>
<td>pick out</td>
<td>sweet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hell out</td>
<td>pick up weight</td>
<td>* takes me up to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>him, that's</td>
<td>place</td>
<td>take out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holland</td>
<td>place of, in</td>
<td>telling you, I'm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
thank you
them, and-
thing, my
third person (oblique) address
through the face
throw
throw dead
throw wet
throw wet
throw with
* from African languages

ace, on my
adjective with infinitive
Africa, for
Afrix #
agteros
alles sal regkom
alles van die beste
all two
already
-and-them
arvie/arvey
baasboets'
bad friends
baie
baie dankie
bakat
baklei
bakore
bangbroek
basela
Bay, the
bek
dikbek
grootbek
haasbek
langbek
skinderbek
beneek(te)
bell
Berg, the
tiger's milk
tramp
tramped, to get
true as God, as
through the face
wait on
want to
don't want to
doesn't want to
-water
sugar water
jelly water etc.

wish you, to
with
come with
go with
* worry
youth, the
come out
come right
come/came there
come to hand
Coojie Christmas
cotch
cronky
crunchie
dag
-dakkies
dankie
darem
deadstill
derms
deurmekaar
dik
dikbek
dikkop
dinges/dingus
dip
door
doesn't want to
don't want to
don't want to
dom

come out
come right
come/came there
come to hand
Coojie Christmas
cotch
cronky
crunchie
dag
-dakkies
dankie
darem
deadstill
derms
deurmekaar
dik
dikbek
dikkop
dinges/dingus
dip
door
doesn't want to
don't want to
don't want to
dom

come out
come right
come/came there
come to hand
Coojie Christmas
cotch
cronky
crunchie
dag
-dakkies
dankie
darem
deadstill
derms
deurmekaar
dik
dikbek
dikkop
dinges/dingus
dip
door
doesn't want to
don't want to
don't want to
dom

come out
come right
come/came there
come to hand
Coojie Christmas
cotch
cronky
crunchie
dag
-dakkies
dankie
darem
deadstill
derms
deurmekaar
dik
dikbek
dikkop
dinges/dingus
dip
door
doesn't want to
don't want to
don't want to
dom

come out
come right
come/came there
come to hand
Coojie Christmas
cotch
cronky
crunchie
dag
-dakkies
dankie
darem
deadstill
derms
deurmekaar
dik
dikbek
dikkop
dinges/dingus
dip
door
doesn't want to
don't want to
don't want to
dom

come out
come right
come/came there
come to hand
Coojie Christmas
cotch
cronky
crunchie
dag
-dakkies
dankie
darem
deadstill
derms
deurmekaar
dik
dikbek
dikkop
dinges/dingus
dip
door
doesn't want to
don't want to
don't want to
dom

come out
come right
come/came there
come to hand
Coojie Christmas
cotch
cronky
crunchie
dag
-dakkies
dankie
darem
deadstill
derms
deurmekaar
dik
dikbek
dikkop
dinges/dingus
dip
door
doesn't want to
don't want to
don't want to
dom

come out
come right
come/came there
come to hand
Coojie Christmas
cotch
cronky
crunchie
dag
-dakkies
dankie
darem
deadstill
derms
deurmekaar
dik
dikbek
dikkop
dinges/dingus
dip
door
doesn't want to
don't want to
don't want to
dom

come out
come right
come/came there
come to hand
Coojie Christmas
cotch
cronky
crunchie
dag
-dakkies
dankie
darem
deadstill
derms
deurmekaar
dik
dikbek
dikkop
dinges/dingus
dip
door
doesn't want to
don't want to
don't want to
dom

come out
come right
come/came there
come to hand
Coojie Christmas
cotch
cronky
crunchie
dag
-dakkies
dankie
darem
deadstill
derms
deurmekaar
dik
dikbek
dikkop
dinges/dingus
dip
door
doesn't want to
don't want to
don't want to
dom

come out
come right
come/came there
come to hand
Coojie Christmas
cotch
cronky
crunchie
dag
-dakkies
dankie
darem
deadstill
derms
deurmekaar
dik
dikbek
dikkop
dinges/dingus
dip
door
doesn't want to
don't want to
don't want to
dom

come out
come right
come/came there
come to hand
Coojie Christmas
cotch
cronky
crunchie
dag
-dakkies
dankie
darem
deadstill
derms
deurmekaar
dik
dikbek
dikkop
dinges/dingus
dip
door
doesn't want to
don't want to
don't want to
dom

come out
come right
come/came there
come to hand
Coojie Christmas
cotch
cronky
crunchie
dag
-dakkies
dankie
darem
deadstill
derms
deurmekaar
dik
dikbek
dikkop
dinges/dingus
dip
door
doesn't want to
don't want to
don't want to
dom
dop
doppie
dorp
dosh
draai, Kaapse
drag
drink
druk
drop
drukked
get dranked
Dutchman
dwaal
Eendrag Maak Mag
excuse me
family
far
farm, the
fat tackles
fiemies
fles, vies
finish(ed) and klaar
foetog
for Africa
forget
fossick
Free State-
Free State Coal,
[Free State micro-
meter screw]
Free State nails
full of
fundi
gamman(jie)
g(r)amadoelas
gedoente
geelbek
gemors
genoot
give
goef
goeters
go garishly
gogga
gom
godie
gooi
gopse
go well
gramadoelas
greenie
grootbek
grootpraat
haasbek
hamba kahle
hairy (back)
hap(pie)
harup
have to
hell in, the
hellOut
helluva, hell of a
here
him, that's
Hindoo
hoepelbeen
Holland
hope so, don't
horries
hou links
howl
huis-toe
inspan (fig.)
indaba
is it?
isn't it?
ja
jaap
jabroer
jags
jakkalstroo
Jan Company
joeys'
joking, you're
jol
jong
just now
kaal
kaalgat
kaalvoet
Kaapse draai
Kaffer-
kafferbrak
kafferpak
kafeir-
kafeir dog
kafeir fowl
kafeir sheep
kafeir truck
white kafeir
kafeir work
kahle, hamba
kak
kamma
Karr(oo) coal
kas
klewietjiebene
Kimberley Train
kinders
klaar, finish(ed) and
klap
kleinhuisie
kleinsing
komp(hi)
kragdag
krans athlete
kransie
krev
kroesie/kroeskop
kwaal-vriende
kwaal
laatlammetjie.
langbek
lap
lapa
lappie legs
lawaal, skop
lekker
lekker lewe
lend
loer
loshnot
maar
make a plan
mali
maningi
mat
mealie cruncher
middelmannetjie

1. [Free State sandwich].
mindae
moan
moenie panic nie
moenie worry nie
moera
moerava / moer of a
monpara
monkey's wedding
mooi loop
môre is nog 'n dag
morsdood
mos
mossie
dead as a mossie
to live on meagie pap and mossies
muhle
muishond
nuuskierige muishond
munt
must
nê
negative, uses of nerves, on my/your nerves, works on my/your
neuk
never
nêks
no, uses of nogal
not so?
now
now-now
oes
off
oke/okie
old fashioned
Old Year's Night
omgekrap
only
on the moment
oorlams
orskiet
op
op die kop
opskop,
opskud,
[ostrich farmer]
otherside
otherwise
ou
ou jokes
oulap.
out of town
overseas
owerheid
pack in 1 and 2
pack out 1 and 2
padkamper
padkos
pampoen
pampoenkop
pap
papbroek
papsnoek
peanuts
pellie
pellie, ou pellie blue
peperkorrels
peppercorn hair
pick up weight
pick out
pik
P.K.
place
place of, in
plak
plan, make a plank
plat
platsak
platteland
play-play
play sport
play white
plus minus
poegaai
Pretoria
pronk
propped [pundus]
rather
rather very
reggie
ride flat
right, not
rinderpest, before the road, in the road, out of the [rock]spider rope ruk
ry versigtig
[s'arvie]
scandal
scare
schlenter
scurvy
se voet
shine through
show through
siestog
sis on you
skaaap
seek
skéfis
skel out
skelm
skêpsel
skiet-en-donder
skiets
skinder
skinderbek
skit/skut
skop
skop lawaai
skon, skiet-en-donder
skrik
skylie/skuifie
slap
slap chips
slapgat  stomp  tough tackle
slat   stompie  tramped, to get
slim  pick up stompies  trassi
slim kerel stops  tronk
sluk storosha  true as God
smaak strandloper  try for white
small little sukkel  twak
smeerlap sweet  up country
smouse taal  vabond
snaaks  teggies  Van der Merwe
[snikkie]  fat teggies  vasbyt
snoep  tough tackle  vat-en-sit
snot-en-trane tackle lips  vatterig
so a little takes me up to  verdome
so little  take out  verdriet, dronk
so long tamaal  verkramptonheid
so, or  tannie, ticket  verlep
so  tell you, I'm  verliga/heid
sommer  thank you  verneuk
so size  them, and-
thick  verneuker
South West  thing, my
span  third person (oblique) vetsak
speel, spiel  address  vies
spider, rock-  through the face  voetsak, in the year
splitter new throw  vrek
spog  throw dead  vroetel
spoorie  throw wet  vrot
sport, to play  throw with  vroteier
-stan  tickets  waal
standpoint  tickety  wag 'n bietjie
stay  long tickey  wait on
stay well  sticky tickey  want to
steeks  tickets  -water
Stellenbosch  two bricks/half a brick sugar water etc.
  and a tickey high   jelly water
stemvee  tiger's milk  vinegar water etc.
stick  tjorrie  weg is ek
stick fast  snorktjor  wish you, to
stick away  [knortjor] witbaas
stick on  tjomnie  with
still  toe  to come with
stoef  toe maar  to go with
stoepr-sitter  tom  take with
stoep talk  tot siens  woes
stokkies draai  totty  werk
  totty pink  worry
wragtig  
youth, the  zoll, 1 & 2
Zoo Train  zut
11. Farming

The vocabulary of farming in South Africa is a large one. What follows is a representative but by no means exhaustive treatment of this field. For convenience the material is subdivided into several sections.

(1) The first, stock farming, contains the terms used for domestic animals and birds, which in South Africa includes the ostrich, and varieties of cattle and sheep. There are also terms used in connection with wool and mutton production, cattle raising, and the problem of how many of either the veld will carry (animal unit, large or small stock unit, stocking rate, stock reduction scheme, S.S.U., veld burning, veld reared), and the identification marks which enable the farmer to keep track of his own (swallow ear, winkelhaak, stomp swaelstert, sky-ea-r). The subsection gives the names of some of the many diseases which attack cattle, horses, sheep and goats.

(2) The second section, Veld, Fodder, Pastures and Grazing, is closely related to the vocabulary of stock farming. Most important, perhaps, are the veld-types and the vocabulary concerned with veld management and the conservation of grazing in a country usually short of water. Here too are names of various types of pasture grasses, indigenous or planted, and those of certain nutritious, usually indigenous, bush. The subsection Plant Pests gives the names of bushes or other plants which trouble the farmer in any of several ways: those poisonous to stock such as bitterbos, gifboon, dubbeltjie, dunsiektbos, krimpsiekbos, nentabos: those which encroach upon grazing veld in the process of 'plant migration', or in other ways destroy it (rehosterbos (booboes), Port Jackson Willow, steekgras, katdoring, swarthaak, wattle): those which are proclaimed weeds, the presence of which must be reported (hakes, jointed cactus, bokbos, satansbos) and the dreaded rooiblom, mislegif or witchweed which is parasitic upon mealies.

(3) Building and Fencing. This section contains the names of some of the buildings or other structures to be found on a farm (farm school, storosha, struis, volkshuisie, packhouse, waenhuis, afdak, skuur): the werf containing the homestead and outbuildings, the opstal or improvements: the enclosures of various kinds (lands, campe, kraals, hoks) and the terms pertaining to the fences which enclose some of them (camp off, dropper, dorinedraad, jackal-proof fencing, concertina gate). Odd terms here are the stellasis for drying biltong etc., the breipal for brei/breying riems, Boeresaal which is normally in a town or village, the State-owned prison-farm and the farm prison or gaol previously kept for convict labour (banditeit).

(4) Agriculture. This section contains some of the vocabulary of the cultivation of crops, soil types, harvest, measures, payment and money; and the names of certain crops such as babala, mealies, manna, kaffircorn.
Cultivation: saaidam, dryland farming, irrigation farm, land (mealie land, wheat land etc.), skoffle(r), sleer, braak, morgen, windskans, Vaaljapie.

Soil etc.: braak, bush soil, sand veld, vleiland, vliegro(u)nd, turf, black turf.

Measures: bucket, bag (bags per morgen), muid, pocket.

Money: Land Bank, voorskot, agterskot, middelskot, tot system, togt system.

(5) Water. This concerns water sources such as fountain, fontein, borehole: water catchment - afloop, dam, saaidam, vleiland; irrigation - lead water, furrow, ride on water, sloop, sluip; and rainfall- worthless mistrain or paraffin, or the results of heavy rain causing dongas and erosion.

(6) Pests: Insects, animals and birds which prey on crops or other animals.

(7) Plant Diseases.

(8) Wagons: A few terms concerning wagons and draught animals, many of which are still in use on farms today: for more of these see 31. Travel and Vehicles.

(9) People: a few terms for people on farms, masters or labour.

(1) Stock farming

Africander, 1 and 2 afterox animal unit beast blinkhaar boerbul boergoat boerperd Bonsmara brak(kie) buck Cape sheep cut donkey duck Dormer Dorper Drakensberger Fatherland cattle fat lamb fat lamb production fence creeper game ranching hamel full mouth hamel slaughteur hamel wissel hamel hans- hanslammetjie etc. hansie Inkone cattle kapater karakul keer vb. koekoesk Kolbroek kraal vb. 'kuku' locks, lox Namaqua sheep Ngoni/Nkona cattle ostrich queen ridgeback riem kalfriem vangriem ronderib salted skey ear skimmel skut vec skut kraal slyt sheep small stock unit sny steekhaar stock
stock fair
stock reduction-
scheme
stock unit, large/
small
stocking rate
stomp
stomp
stawelster
swallow ear
sweep
'tail truck'

Animal Diseases
autumn fever
biliary
black leg
black quarter
bloedpens
blue tongue
brandsiekte
dikkop / geel dikkop
domsiekte
dunkrimsiekte
gall sickness
gal siekte
giel siekte
gif siekte

(2) Veld, Fodder, Pastures and Grazing
American aloe
beaten out
bergveld
bitterbosveld
bloobos
blue bush
brakbos
bushveld
camp
grazing camp
veld camp
eaten out
elephant’s food
gallsickness veld
ganna
garingboom
tollie
trassie
trek-ox
trek sheep
tripple vb.
Vaderland cattle
vasmaker ooi/ewe
vee
veeplaas
veld

4.2

tail truck

veld burning

veld cattle
off the veld
veld reared
veld resting
volbek
voorbok
winkelhaak
wissel
unwisseted
wissel hamel
Zulu cattle

nenta
opblaaskrimsiekte
paardesiekte
papies
quarter evil
redwater
rinderpest
salted / unsalted
snotsiekte
spoorsiekte
stiff sickness
styf siekte / stywesiekte
three days’ sickness
tulp poisoning
veld sickness

quick grass
red grass
redwater veld
Rhodes grass
roobos
rooi gras
sandelveld
skaaapplaas
soet gras
spekboom
sweet grass
sweet veld
teff grass
thorn veld
tramped out
twa (toa) grass

plant migration
veld
veld damage
veld deterioration
veld hay
veld management
veld reinforcement
veld replacement
veld resting
veld burning

veld types
berg veld
bushveld
gebroken veld
grass veld
Kar(r)oo veld
mixed veld
mopane veld
ranching veld

Plant Pests
besembos
bitterbos
'boeboes'
boetebos
driedoring
dubeltjie
dunsiektebossie
duweltjie
gifboom
hakea
jointed cactus
kakiebos

rooiagrasveld
rooiagrasveld
soetveld
suurveld
sweetveld
thorn veld
vlakteveld
vlei veld
vlei veld
vleigras
voer

rooikrans willow
satansbos
[skilpadbos, vygie]
steek gras
stick grass
stysiektebossie
swarthaak

(3) Building and Fencing
afdaak
apron
baken
beacon
[Boeresaal]
breipaal
brei riems
camp n camp (off)
concertina gate
doringdraad
dropper
farm
farm school
farm prison
hok, fowl, calf etc.
house camp
house kraal

improved
improvements
jackal (proof)
fencing
kraal
cattle kraal
goat kraal
sheep kraal etc.
morgen
opstal
packhouse
plaas/plaats
place
[prison farm]
schuur

skutkraal
stellarie
storosha
struis
tamboekie grass
unimproved
veekraal
veeplaas
veld camp
verandah
volkshuisie
waenhuis
werf
windskans

skut
(4) **Agriculture**

- agterskot
- babula
- bag
- boer pumpkin
- braak vb
- braaking
- brak
- bucket
- bush soil
- dryland
  - dryland farming farm with irrigation farm kaffir corn land land camp mealie land wheat land

**Land Bank**

(5) **Water**

- asloop
- borehole
- borehole water
- dam
- dam scoop
- donga
- erosion donga
  - [fontein]

(6) **Pests**

- bont tick
- brommer
- fly, the lammervanger lice/louse
- kalande
- Karoo caterpillar

(7) **Plant Diseases**

- kroesblaar
- kromnek
(8) **Wagons**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Equivalent 1</th>
<th>Equivalent 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>after ox</td>
<td>scotch cart</td>
<td>strop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disselboom</td>
<td>scotch cart oxen</td>
<td>sweep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inspan</td>
<td>skey</td>
<td>trek ox</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kneehalter</td>
<td>skey yoke</td>
<td>voorslag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nekstrop</td>
<td>skoffler</td>
<td>waenhuis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outspan</td>
<td>skoffler oxen</td>
<td>yokeskey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sail</td>
<td>span</td>
<td>yoke pin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(9) **People**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Equivalent 1</th>
<th>Equivalent 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bywoner</td>
<td>togt boy</td>
<td>vee boer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poor white</td>
<td>togt labourer</td>
<td>volk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stock farmer</td>
<td>trekboer</td>
<td>volkies</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[cheque book farmer / stoepsitter.]
The fish included in this category are not in any way scientifically grouped: marine, fresh-water fish, crustaceans and shellfish alike are presented in the alphabetical order in which they will be found in the text. Similarly edible and non-edible species are not distinguished from one another. These names are given here simply because they have become part of the language we speak and read, not because they denote species of any particular importance. The scientific names of fish in the main text have been taken from the meticulously indexed work of Professor and Mrs J. L. B. Smith, and from the list of names of fresh-water fish of Southern Africa by Dr P. B. N. Jackson of Rhodes University.

alfkoord  galjoen  maasbanker
alikreukel  geelbek  marsbanker
angler  geelstert  Miss Lucy
arikreukel  gieliemientjie  moggel
baardman  'gogga'  monk
bagger/bagre  grunter  mooinooientjie
bamboofish  pignose grunter  moonfish
bamvoosie  spotted grunter  moonie/ey
biskop  striped grunter  musselcracker
blaasop  ha(a)rdier  musselcrusher
blacktail  halfkoord  ollycrock
bont dagerad  hammerhead (shark)  pampingoes
bont paling  panga
bully  hottentot  perlemoen
Cape lady  jacopever  peuloog
Cape salmon  janbruin  pignose grunter
catfish  kaapenaar  platanner
chokka  kabeljou  poenskop
chor chor  karanteen  Prodigal son
crayfish  katonkel  redbait
dageraad/dag(ger)aad  katunker  redfish
daggerhead/heart  klipfish/vis(sie)  (red) Roman
damba  knorhaan  reds
dassie  kob  rietbul
dikbek(kie)  kolstert  rooi aas
dikkop  kurper  seacat/seekat
dikoog  banded kurper  seevarkie
doppie  klipkous  seventyfour
elf(t)  knorhaan  silver
flatty  kob  silverfish
Frans Madame  kolstert  silverfish
French Madam  kurper  silvie
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Afrikaans</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skipjack</td>
<td>stompneus</td>
<td>tshokka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skipper</td>
<td>rooi/red stompneus</td>
<td>vaalhaai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snoek</td>
<td>wit/white stompneus</td>
<td>-vis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China snoek</td>
<td>streepdassie</td>
<td>vundu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soldier</td>
<td>streephas(r)der</td>
<td>wildeperd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spotted grunter</td>
<td>stre(e)pie</td>
<td>wildevis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>springer</td>
<td>tasselfish</td>
<td>yellowbelly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steenbras</td>
<td>tiger</td>
<td>yellowfish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stinkfish</td>
<td>tjokka</td>
<td>yellowtail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stockfish</td>
<td>tjortjor</td>
<td>zebra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stokvis/fish</td>
<td>toby(fish)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stompie</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
13. Flowers

Included here are only a few of the flowers of South Africa - only those the common names of which have become part of the English vocabulary of this country. Most of these are wild flowers but a few terms listed below are the South African names for familiar garden flowers of Europe, e.g. Christmas flower (hydrangea), katjiepie (gardenia), gesig (pansy), leeubekkie (antirrhinum - snapdragon.) The botanical names used in the text have been taken from C. A. Smith's The Common Names of South African Plants, the 1966 edition by E. Percy Phillips and Estelle van Hoepen.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Afrikaans</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Botanical Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aandblom</td>
<td>Christmas flower</td>
<td>Namaqua(land)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aasblom</td>
<td>crane flower</td>
<td>marigold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brown Afrikaner</td>
<td>blue/blou disa</td>
<td>nerina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pink Afrikaner</td>
<td>mountain disa</td>
<td>oupa-en/met-sy-pyp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red Afrikaner</td>
<td>red disa</td>
<td>painted lady</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>almanac, kaffir</td>
<td>everlasting</td>
<td>piesangblom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avondbloem</td>
<td>geel(s)blom</td>
<td>piglily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>babiana</td>
<td>gousblom</td>
<td>Pride of -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barberton daisy</td>
<td>heuningblom</td>
<td>Pride of de Kaap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begging hand</td>
<td>kaalmansblom</td>
<td>Pride of India</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>berglelie</td>
<td>kaffir honeysuckle</td>
<td>Pride of Table Mountain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blom/bloem</td>
<td>kaffir almanac</td>
<td>Pride of Fransch Hoek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aandblom</td>
<td>kaffir honeysuckle</td>
<td>protea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aasblom</td>
<td>gousblom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avondblom</td>
<td>gousblom</td>
<td>giant protea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>botterblom</td>
<td>gousblom</td>
<td>king protea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gousblom</td>
<td>gousblom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seeroogblom etc.</td>
<td>gousblom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blou-</td>
<td>gousblom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blouaalwee</td>
<td>gousblom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blou disa</td>
<td>gousblom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bloutulp etc.</td>
<td>gousblom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blushing bride</td>
<td>gousblom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bobbejaantjie</td>
<td>gousblom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bokbaal vygie</td>
<td>gousblom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bokhorinkie</td>
<td>gousblom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boslelie</td>
<td>gousblom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>botterblom</td>
<td>gousblom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bottle brush</td>
<td>gousblom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brandlelie</td>
<td>gousblom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cape honeysuckle</td>
<td>gousblom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chincherinchee</td>
<td>gousblom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chink</td>
<td>gousblom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Namaqua(land) daisy</td>
<td>gousblom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Namaqualand gousblom</td>
<td>gousblom</td>
<td>torch lily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
tulp
bloutulp
rooitulp etc.
varklelies/bloem
vlei lily

vygie
bokbaai vygie
muisvygie
sandvygie etc.
vleiboom

[waggon wood]
waterendjie
yesterday, today and tomorrow
14. Fruits and Vegetables

This small category includes fruit and vegetables both cultivated and wild. As in the case of the flowers some are indigenous names of indigenous species and others are South African names for European species: na(a)rtjie (tangerine), span-spek (cantaloupe), pampelmoes (shaddock), mispel (medlar). In several cases the names used in this country are also found in other parts of the world: the widely used corruption of avocado, 'alligator pear', bringaal used also in India for the aubergine or eggplant, and pa(w)paw (papaya) used in North America and Jamaica, as is lady finger for a small banana.

alligator pear
amadumbi
amatungulu
anyswortel
boer pumpkin
borrie-
borrie patat
borrie quince
bringal
butter chilli
calabash
Cape gooseberry
dhuni (Indian parsley)
Dingaan's apricot
drogie
droog-my-keel
gaukum/gbokum
gem squash
ghaap/guaap
green mealie
guarrie bessies/berries
hane-poot
Hotnotskool
Hottentot('s) cabbage
Hottentot('s) fig
imfe
izindlubu
Jugo Beans

-kaffer, kaffir
kaffir beans
kaffir corn
kaffir fig
kaffir groundboontjie
kaffir groundnut
kaffir orange
kaffir plum
kafferwaatlemoen
kaffir watermelon
karree berries
karkoer
kei apple
klapper
kockoemakranka
kukumakranka
lady finger
mabela
madumbi
makataan
maroela/marula berries
mealie
green mealie
kaboe mealie(s)
mispel
monkey orange
na(a)rtjie
pampelmoes

pampoen
pa(w)paw
patat, borrie
pinotage
pit (denne)
pomelo
rissie
(m)sobosobo
soetriet
sour fig
spa(a)nspek
squad
gem squash
hubbard squash
suury
sweet cane
tai-pit/pip
taloviya
t'samma (melon)
turksvy
uintjies,[ hotnots]
waatlemoen, kaffer
waterblommetjie
wateruintjie
wild fig
wooden orange
15. Games, Dances and Diversions

This category covers many of the lighter sides of life and has for convenience been broken up, as have several others, into smaller classes. A complete alphabetised list follows these.

Active games and terms pertaining to them.

Outdoors: boeresport, bok bok, bollemakiesie, vb jol, play sport, kleilatjie, ghoen, jukeskei, skel, kennetjie, skop die blik, kick the tin, skollollie, skilpadtrek, tok-tokkie, 'Bok; foefie/fuffie slid: vroteier, abba, ruk, Protea, Leopard, Springbok, Springbok colours etc.

Indoors: donkermannetjie, ystermannetjie, * kussingelaan, 


Carnival: Old Year's Night, Tweede Nuwe Jaar, Coons, Coon Carnival, moppies, liedjies, mombakkies, jool, bokjol, [bok, a]

Rowdiness: opskop, skop lwaai.

Humour: Van der Merwe, Gammat, Gammatjie taal, Meraai, Bushveld Ben, ou ioke, [moppie].


Music and Songs: Jan Pieriewiet, Jannie met die Hoepelbeen, Kimberley Train, Suikerbos, liedjies, ghommali edji es, moppies, boereliedjies, boereorkes, ramkie(tjie), vastrap music.

Dancing and Social gatherings: Volkspele, sheepskin dance, velskoen, opskud, opskud-en-uitkap, tickey-draai, vastrap, braai, braaiwleis, bokiol, askoek slaan.

African music, dancing and instruments: malombo, malombo drums, mbaqang, township jazz, kwela, penny whistle, ngoma dancing, gumboot dancing, ngoma, gorah, som gom, gubu, marimba, mbira, calabash piano, Mashona piano, [ramkie(tjie)]. Social gatherings: beerdrink, stokvel party, big time stokvel, tickey line stokvel, shebeen party.

Love and Lovers:

Courting: opsit, opsitting, opsitbank, opsitkers/candle, sit up, vry, vryer, vryvery, vryboelgo, sny, [boeresport] voetiie-voetiie, [gool]

Endearments: bokkie, skat, my thing, [bok, kërle, doedie.]
abba
alie (blood)
askoek slaan
beer
drink
biocafe
bioscope
blik, skop die
boere-
boereliedjies
boeremusiek
boereorkes
boeresport
bok
tok, a
bokjol
boer
bolemakiesie
book, comic
braai
braaivleis
Bushveld Ben
calabash piano
cattie
coon
Coon Carnival
doodie
dolos
donkermannetjie
egg
foefie/fuffie slide
Gammatjie
Gammatjie taal
Gammatjie jokes
ghoen
ghomma
ghommaliedjies
glassie
goil
gom-gom
gorah
gubu
gumboot dance
homemade
ironie (steely/ie)
jakkie
Jan Pierewiet
Jannie-met-die
hoepel-been
jol

Protea
queen
ramkie
ramkietjie
ru(c)k
S.A.B.C.
sailorboy
shebeen
shebeen party
shebeen queen
sheepskin
sit up
skat
skoi
skiet and donder
skilpad trek
skilpad loop
skollollie
skop die blik
skop, skiet and donder
snot-en-trane drama/
literature/theatre
sny
Springbok
Springbok radio
Springbok sport
(colours, blazer etc.)
steek
stink
stokvel
stokvel, big time
stokvel party
stokvel play
stokvel, ticky-line
stokkie
Suikerbos
thing, my
tickey-/tiekie-
tickey-aand
tickey-draai
tickey-drive
tickey-line
toktokkie 1 and 2
tol
tollie
township jazz
[trek fishing]

Tweede Nuwejaar

1. Also bottlie, sodie.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Van der Merwe</th>
<th>vingertrek</th>
<th>vryery</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Van der Merwe jokes</td>
<td>voetjie-voetjie</td>
<td>vryhoek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Van der Merwe stories</td>
<td>volkspele(r)</td>
<td>woer-woer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vastrap</td>
<td>vroteier</td>
<td>yakkie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vastrap music</td>
<td>vry</td>
<td>ystermannetjie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>velskoen</td>
<td>vryer</td>
<td>zoll</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As in the foregoing category (15) the diverse fields covered by this group of terms are for convenience divided under different headings, followed by an overall alphabetical list of the whole.

Words and phrases pertaining to states of mind and body: on my nerves, dwalaalie, benoudheid, kwai, iemies, clipped, mope, frie, naa, works on my/your nerves, slap, oes, pap, poegaal, nadora, babelaas, droonkerdriet, chotch/kotch (vb), omgebkap, deurmeekaar, jae, flies/vies, the hell in, woes, not right, kamma, overmass, swak, morsdood, spot-en-trane, verlep, kleinsierg, haasbek, langbek, dikbek, stoef, skrik, fall pregnant, veld fever, trekrees, on boep, sina.

Personal Appearance and Characteristics: bakore, boep, beer boep, ookbaard, hoeple been, kiewietjie-bene, jappie-legs, kroeskop, kroes, kroesie, korrelkop, kyf, neperkorrela, pepercorns, pepercorn hair, haasbek, lucky lips, kaalvoet, kaalgat, taal haar, moffie, trassie, witkous, Yskeeloog: dom, dik, toe, thick, parmantig, snoep, bry/brey/brey.

Ailments and Diseases: apricot sickness, appelkoossiekte, [benoudheid], chorib, horries, kwale, lekker niek, sinkings, skieties, stops, -siekte, redwater, [veld fever], veld sores, pampoeneties, white sore throat, [sandworm], [ligger], stick on vb.

Anatomy: milt, derm, gorrel, [Hottentot apron] pinkie, pusus.

Witches, Witchcraft and the Supernatural: bones, throw the bones, bula party, smelling (out) dolos, herbalist, inyanga, witchdoctor, sangoma, ulhaka, impundulu bird, lightning bird, marnlambo, muti, muti man, muti shop, tikoleshe/kolokoshe, tagati, masfufunyane/a (ufufunya), rainmaker, rain queen, ritual murder, spook, goellery, toor, toordokter/doctor, toorgoed, [slangmeester, slangsteenjilie, snake stone ], [slaams, slamaas, jumat].

Organisations: Harry's Angels, Noodhulpliga.


* Patent Medicines
aloe juice
appelkoos siekte
apricot sickness
babelas various sp.
bakore
bangalala
benoudheid druppels
boegoe
boep
beer boep
on boep
boereraat
bokbaard
boon
boom tea
bones
throw the bones
borsdruppels
bry (bray/bray)
buchu
buchu brandy
buchu leaves
buck fat
bula party
cancer bush
castor oil bush
chorb
clapped
cotch
dagga
dassieboegce
classiepis
derm
deurmeekaar
dik
dikbek
doepe

doepe-olie
dolos
dom
drogies
droog-my-keel
duiwelsdrek
Dutch Medicines
dwaal
dwaalle

eina
fall pregnant
fiemies
fris
ghwarrie]
goëlery
gorrel
guarri
guarri tea
haasbek
Harry's Angels
hell in, the
herbalist
hing
hoepelbeen
horries
hotnotskougoed
hotnotsee
Hottenot's tea
Hottenot apron
[Hottenot's boego]
[Hottenot's kukumakranka]
huisapteek
impundulu bird
insangu
inyanga
jags
jalappoeier
jigger
jumat
kaalagt
kaalvoet
kaffir tea
kamma-
kankerbos
kannawortel
kersbos
kiewietjiebane
kiipsweet
kleinserig
korrelkop
kotch
kroechkop
kuif/kyf
kukumakranka
kukumakranka
brandy
kroesie
kwaai
kwaal, kwale
langbek
lappie-legs
lekker-jeuk
lightning bird
masfunyans/a
masuta
malpitte
marmambo
moffie
moeg
mpundulu bird
mtagati
muti
muti man
muti shop
naar
nadors
nerves, on his/her etc.
nerves, works on your
Noodhulpiga
nyanga
oes
Old Dutch Medicine
omgekrap
overmass
pampoenjies
pap
parmanig
pepperkorrels
peppercorns
peppercorn hair
pinkie
poegaa
puinbos
rainmaker
rain queen
redwater
[reggie]
regmaker
right, not
ritual murder
rooibos tea/tee
sangoma
Satan's dung
| seeroog-  | swak | turlington |
| seeroogbossie | sweatleaf | ufufanyana |
| sinkings | sweetkruie | uhlaka |
| skeeloog | takhaar | umtagathi |
| skiefs | tackie lips | veld- |
| skrik | Guarri_tee | veld fever |
| slaams | kaffer_tee | veld sores |
| slangmeester |  | veld remedy |
| slangsteentjie |  |  |
| slap | thick | verdriet, dronk |
| smell out | throw bones | verlepe |
| snake stone | tikoloshe | [verligtheid] |
| snoep | toe | [verkramtheid] |
| snot-en-ta1 e | tokoloshe | versterkdruppels |
| spook | toor | vies |
| stick on | toordokter | white sore throat |
| stinkblaar | toorgoed | witchdoctor |
| stoeef | trekgees | wolwegif |
| stops | treksel |  |

1. slamaaier
17. Historical Administration

This group of words consists of terms, many of them obsolete or obsolescent, which have reference to the early administration of the Cape Colony under the Dutch East India Company (Jan Compagnie, Here Seventien, free burgher, Slave Lodge, V.O.C.), and under the regime of the British (Court Calendar, District, Division, location).

Included are the names of certain officials (Fiscal, Secunde, Secretarius, landdrost, heemraad, veldwagtmeeister), terms relating to land tenure and estates (leeningsplaats, request place, quitrent, full place, Boedelkamer), monetary units current at the time (rixdollar, schelling, dubbeltjie, stuiver), and items relating to trade and taxes (opgaaf, pagter, kaffir fair, goodfor).

The few later terms concerning the Boer republics or the South African Wars, see category (20), are here bracketed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>African Court Calendar</th>
<th>Erf</th>
<th>Fair, Kaffir</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Almanac</td>
<td></td>
<td>Field cornet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blueback</td>
<td>boer</td>
<td>Field cornety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boedelkamer</td>
<td>boer</td>
<td>Fiscal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bode</td>
<td>[Boer bank note]</td>
<td>Free burgher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[Boer bank note]</td>
<td></td>
<td>Full place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[Boer bank note]</td>
<td>[Boer bank note]</td>
<td>Goodfor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burgher</td>
<td>Heemraad</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burgher commando</td>
<td>Here Seventien</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burgher duty</td>
<td>Jan Company</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burgher Senate</td>
<td>[Koffiegeld]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burger ship</td>
<td>Landdrost</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Free burgher</td>
<td>Leeningsplaats</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cape triangular</td>
<td>Loan place</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commando, burgher</td>
<td>Location</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commandant</td>
<td>Opgaaf</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field commandant</td>
<td>Pagter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Veld commandant</td>
<td>Pasbrief</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compagnie, Jan</td>
<td>Plaats, leeningsplaats</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Company, the</td>
<td>Placaat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coolie</td>
<td>Place,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Court Calendar</td>
<td>Loan place</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>District</td>
<td>Full place</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Division</td>
<td>Request place</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Divisional Boundary</td>
<td>Political Commissioner</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drosty</td>
<td>Quitrent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dubbeltjie</td>
<td>-raad-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dutch East India Company</td>
<td></td>
<td>[Raadhuis]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[Raadsaal]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[Volksraad]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Reformed Church</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Heemraad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Rixdollar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Robben Island</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Schelling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Secunde</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Secretarius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Skillling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Slave Lodge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Stadhuis/house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Stuiwer, various sp.forms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Tronk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Veld corporal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Veld cornet/cornety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Veldwagtmeeister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[Vierkleur]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>V.O.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Wardmaster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Water fiskaal/fiscal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[Zarp]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[Zuid Afrikaansche Republik]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
18. House, Garden, Building and Buildings

This category contains terms relating to houses in town or country, indoors and out, the names of some public or semi-public buildings, and some of the more generally known terms of the building trade. Here too are the names of specifically South African pieces of furniture and other household equipment, and of a number of indigenous woods used in building or cabinet making.

As in the case of several other categories the vocabulary of this is for convenience divided into smaller, more homogeneous sections. Of the lists only that of the names of various woods is alphabetical. In the others the terms have been grouped in what has seemed a logical sequence. A full alphabetical list of the contents of category 18 follows the shorter ones.

HOUSES: Cape Dutch, dakkamer, dekriet, holbol, solder, brand-solder, balk, stoep, stoep-bank, (stoep-kamer), Robben Island stone/slate, stable door, bo-en-onder-deur, onder-deur, voorhuis, voorkamer, yellowwood/geelhout - beams, -floors, -furniture, peach pip floor, perskepitvloer, copper, hoekkas, muurkas, rusbank, sitbank, opsitbank, bankie, riempie-chair, -seats, -stoel, stoelriempies, kist, bruikas, wakas (agterkis, voorkis), Tulbagh chair, ballestoel, tub chair, konsistorie stoel, sandveld chair, Cape foot, kudu foot, voetstofie, konfoor, stoofie, klerekas, jonkmanskas, riempie-katel, linnekas.

Kitchen: koskas, slave chair, (slave hole).

Fire: Brandhoutboom, (kreunelboom), takkies, dennebol (donnyball), miskoek, Free State coal, Karroo coal, doofpoet. Cooking: bakoond, bakkie, oblietjie, iron/pan, kettle, koffieketel, konfoor, tessie, skottel, potjie, botterbalie, soutvaatjie, boer soap, berry wax, zinc bath, lappie, jammerlappie, (wax berry), stoppi, vryhoek, (vryhoek), koffieketel.

Cleaning: vadoek, ‘dip’, blue soap, smeear, mis(t), boer soap, berry wax, zinc bath, lappie, jammerlappie, (wax berry), stoppi, vryhoek, (vryhoek), koffieketel.

Bedding and other soft goods, luggage: Basuto blanket, koffers, velkommers, karos, cushion, mat, kaffir sheeting, sailcloth, face cloth, book bag, school bag, blikkrommel, trommel.

Objects: Africana, bokas, Boer bank note, veldponde, Cape Triangular Fernhutter knives, paintstone, konfyt jar, moskonfyt jar, Martevaan, konfoor, konvoor, tessie, V.O.C. mark, V.O.C. glass, silver, Arita ware etc., [ostrich skin/egg].

Cellar: anker, leaguer, stukvat, (slave quarters).


* brandewynketel, a copper still, has been omitted from the text as too rare for inclusion - a sought-after collector’s piece.
TIMBERS: (assegaaí wood/hout), baster- (prefix), beefwood, blackwood, beekenhouw, borrichout, els (rooi els, wite els), geelhout, hard pear, ironwood, kaffir plum, karreschout, kersiehout, kiaat, knobwood, kalander, kamassiehout, rooi melkhout, wit melkhout, red milkwood, white milkwood, pear, red, hard, white pear/peer, (pylhouut), Rhodesian teak, rooihout, saffraan, sneezewood, stinkhout, red, black and Camdeboo (cannibal) stinkwood, swarthout, tambuti/tambotie wood/hout, tierhout, Transvaal teak, umzimbete, wagonwood, yellowwood, ysterhout, swarthout.


LAND, BUILDING, CONSTRUCTION, TOOLS: erf, stand, unimproved, improved, dung floor, misvloer, perskepvyloer, balk, faggot, klon, sieje, klinker, Free State nails, zinc roofing, (sink), dekriet (dakriet), dagha, hardup, gereedskap, coolie pan, mason, handlanger, tradesman, troffel, koevoet, sail, skoffler, trek saw, bobbejaan spanner (Free State micrometer screw), boslemmer, (trekknet), doles, oukip, Robben Island Stone/Slate.

CHURCH AND OTHER PUBLIC BUILDINGS: (Kerk), konsistorie, (konsistorie stoel), preekstoel, kerkhuis, Nagmaalhuis, (Nagmaal tent), pastorie. Stadhuis, Drostdy, Slave Lodge, Raadsaal, Raadhuis, Voortrekker Monument, Boeresaal, Bunga. (tronk), (eating house), (abafazi), (amadoda), ostrich palace

abafazi, afdak, agterkis, amadoda, anker, apron, assegaaí wood/hout, bakkis, bakkoond, balie-, botterbalie, soutbalie, balie stoel, balk, bank, rusbank, sitbank, stoepbank, bankie, baster- (woods), Basuto Blanket, bath, zinc, beefwood, berry wax, blackwood, blue soap, bobbejaan spanner, boekenhouw, bo-en-onder-deur, Boer bank note, boer soap, Boeresaal, bokaal, bookbag, borriehout, boslemmer
bottervaatjie etc.
braai
brandhoutboom
bree/riems
breipaal
bruidskis
Bunga
bush soil
calabash
Cape Dutch (style)
Cape foot
Cape Triangular compound
coolie pan
copper
cushion
dagha
dakkamer
dakriet
denne/dannebol
dip'
dolos
donnyball
doringdraad
dropper
Drostdy (House)
dung floor
els,
rietels
witels
eating house
erf
face cloth
faggot
Free State Coal
Free State Nails
furrow
geelhout
gereedskap
kogogo
gracht
handlanger
hard peer/pear
hardup
hartebeeshuis
heok
hoekkas
vryboek
Hernhutter (knife)
hok
holbol
improvement
ironwood
jonkmanskas
kaffir-
kaffir plum
kaffir pot
kaffir sheeting
karreehout
-kas
hoekkas
jonkmanskas
linnekas
koskas
klerekas
karos
Karlooo coal
katel
kaya
Kerk
[kerkhuis]
kersiehout
kettle/ketel
...coffee kettle [brandewynketel]
kiaat
kis(t)
agterkis
braks
bruidskis
gereedskap
vooriks
wakis
kleinhuisie
klinker
klompie/je
knobwood
koekoet
koffieketel
kombbers
konfoor/komvoor
konfiyt jar
konsistorie
konsistorie stoel
koskas
kraal
kraal manure
kreupelboom
kudu feet
kweekgras
kalander
kamassiehout
lappie/lap
jammerlappie
leaguer
longdavel
Marstevaan
mason
mat
sleeping mat
matjiesgoed
matjestou
[mat rush]
melkhou/mmilkwood
rooi/melkhou, red,
white
mis
miskoe.
misjryeer.
monkeys/face/stone
moskonfiyt jar
murkas
Nagmaal huis
[Nagmaal tent]
National Road camp
oblietjie iron/pan
onderdeur
opsitbank
opstal
ostrich palace
ouklip
packhouse
paintstone
pastorie
peach pip floor
pear/peer
hard peer/peer

* Free State micrometer screw
Free State bolt
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>red pear/peer</td>
<td>sluit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>white pear/peer</td>
<td>smeer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pekel balie</td>
<td>sneezewood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perskopevlies</td>
<td>solder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>picaniny kia</td>
<td>soutvaatjie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.K. pondok</td>
<td>squaredavel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>preekstoeel</td>
<td>stable door</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pylhout</td>
<td>Stadhuis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quick (grass)</td>
<td>stamper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fine quick</td>
<td>stand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coarse quick</td>
<td>stellasie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raadsaal</td>
<td>stinkhout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raadhuis</td>
<td>stinkwood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rest camp</td>
<td>black stinkwood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhodesian teak</td>
<td>Camdeboo stinkwood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>riem</td>
<td>red stinkwood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>riempie</td>
<td>-stiel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>riempie chair</td>
<td>konsistorie stoel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>riempie katel</td>
<td>riempie stoel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>riempie seat</td>
<td>Tulbagh stoel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>riempie stoel</td>
<td>stoelriempies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>riempie stool etc.</td>
<td>stoep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>road camp</td>
<td>stoepbank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Robben Island stone/slate</td>
<td>stoep chairs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rondavel (squaredavel)</td>
<td>stoepkamer etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roode/zooiels</td>
<td>stofie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rooihout</td>
<td>stompi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ruwbank</td>
<td>stoof</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saffraan</td>
<td>storosha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sail</td>
<td>stove</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sandveld chair</td>
<td>struis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schoolbag</td>
<td>styfklipsjies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schuur</td>
<td>stukvat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sink</td>
<td>swarthout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skaapplaas</td>
<td>takkies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skerm</td>
<td>tambuki grass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skoffel(er)</td>
<td>Tambuti wood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skottel</td>
<td>tessie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skuur</td>
<td>tigerhout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slave</td>
<td>Tomboti wood/hout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slave bell</td>
<td>tradesman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slave chair</td>
<td>Transvaal teak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slave hole</td>
<td>trapvloer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slave quarters</td>
<td>trek saw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sloot</td>
<td>troffel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
19. Human Types

This category brings together a heterogeneous collection of nouns, all of which refer to a human being of some kind. Some are the terms used for members of a family (upa, ouma, oom, tante, boet, neef, niggie) most of which will also be found in Category 1. Modes of Address. Others refer to occupations (canteen keeper, pagter, kooper, housemother/father, koppie walloper, hawker, general dealer, kurveyor); a few in this group have unfavourable or potentially unfavourable connotations (kaffir trader, Boer-verneuker, bush mechanic, bosbouer, spoorie and padkamper all move on to dubious ground.) Others are the names of officials past and present (fiscal, landdrost, heemraad, commandant, headman, blackiack), or of people in the army (blouie, oman, roofie). A fair number, some of which are at 23. Languages, Peoples and Tribes, have reference to race or colour (European, Coloured, Malay, black, white, blanke). Many of these are offensive (coolie, Dutchman, kaffir/er, coon, geelbek, boesman, choc, hotnot). Related to these are some of the political terms: kafferboetie, betogeli, breeder, handsupper, joiner, most of which have adverse connotations: as have the terms of the rock-spider, hairy-back, and mealie-cruncher set. Category 19 contains numerous other derogatory terms comparable with the 'fool, dolt, crook' set of ordinary English. These range from the mildly deprecatory to the grossly offensive (dwaalie, skelm, askoek, mompara, papbroek, blikskottel, domkop, hou tkop, jaap, skaap, vabond, donder, all of which vary in strength according to context or tone of voice).

Other items, most of which are also to be found at 16, have reference to personal appearance or other idiosyncracy (vetsak, kroeskop, skeeloog, dikbek, korrelkop) or to sexual deviance (moffie and trassie).

On a 'safer' level are most of the words which have reference simply to a place of origin: Banana boy (Natal), Vaalpens (Transvaal), Kaapenaar (Cape), Woltone (Cape), Blikoor (Orange Free State).

There are some African words here (all to be found also at 2 African World): abakwetha, kwedin, umfan, makoti, imbongi, inyanga, sangoma, intombi, moruti, umfundisi etc. which have reference for the most part to age, status or occupation.

This sketch of category 19 is by no means exhaustive: there are many more words in it than can be listed here, but it should give at least an impression of the range, in the text, of vocabulary referring to 'all sorts and conditions of men.'
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Afrikaans</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Afrikaans</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abafazi</td>
<td>abakweta</td>
<td>boere-</td>
<td>boeremeisie</td>
<td>coolie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abelungu</td>
<td>actuarius</td>
<td>boereseun</td>
<td>boeresuneun</td>
<td>coon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abelungu</td>
<td>African</td>
<td>boereverneuker</td>
<td>boereverneuker</td>
<td>crunchie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agteros</td>
<td>agteros</td>
<td>boesman</td>
<td>boesman</td>
<td>dertiger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agterryer</td>
<td>aia</td>
<td>bo(o)de</td>
<td>bo(o)de</td>
<td>diaken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alderman</td>
<td>algemene handelaar</td>
<td>boet</td>
<td>boet</td>
<td>dikkok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amabunu</td>
<td>amadoda</td>
<td>ouboet</td>
<td>ouboet</td>
<td>doedie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amadoda</td>
<td>amagoduka</td>
<td>kleinboet</td>
<td>kleinboet</td>
<td>dominee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amajoni</td>
<td>amalafta</td>
<td>boetie/bhuti</td>
<td>boetie/bhuti</td>
<td>domkoper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amapakati</td>
<td>amasojia</td>
<td>bof</td>
<td>bof</td>
<td>donder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>askoek</td>
<td>Aunty</td>
<td>Bok</td>
<td>Bok</td>
<td>Dopper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asroek</td>
<td>ayah</td>
<td>bok</td>
<td>bok</td>
<td>Dorslandtrekker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bantu</td>
<td>bangbroek</td>
<td>bokpal(s)</td>
<td>bokpal(s)</td>
<td>dronkie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bangie</td>
<td>Bangana boy</td>
<td>bokkie</td>
<td>bokkie</td>
<td>Dutchman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>barutie</td>
<td>Bombay Merchant</td>
<td>Bolander</td>
<td>Bolander</td>
<td>dwaalrie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bergie</td>
<td>bood</td>
<td>Bombay Merchant</td>
<td>Bombay Merchant</td>
<td>European</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>betoger</td>
<td>bosbouer</td>
<td>boode</td>
<td>boode</td>
<td>family</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bibi</td>
<td>bossboy</td>
<td>bosbouer</td>
<td>bosbouer</td>
<td>father, big/small</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bitterreinder</td>
<td>Botha's Babes</td>
<td>Botha's Babes</td>
<td>Botha's Babes</td>
<td>fasti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>black</td>
<td>boulder</td>
<td>Botha's Babes</td>
<td>Botha's Babes</td>
<td>field cornet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blackjack</td>
<td>boy</td>
<td>bouder</td>
<td>bouder</td>
<td>fiscal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blanke</td>
<td>boy</td>
<td>boy</td>
<td>boy</td>
<td>water fiscal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blikoor</td>
<td>delivery boy</td>
<td>delivery boy</td>
<td>delivery boy</td>
<td>fossicker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blikskottel</td>
<td>flat boy</td>
<td>flat boy</td>
<td>flat boy</td>
<td>free burgher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bloobaadjie</td>
<td>garden boy</td>
<td>garden boy</td>
<td>garden boy</td>
<td>fundi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blougam</td>
<td>house boy etc.</td>
<td>house boy</td>
<td>house boy etc.</td>
<td>gammat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blouie</td>
<td>broeder</td>
<td>broeder</td>
<td>broeder</td>
<td>gatjapanner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blourokke</td>
<td>Broederbonder</td>
<td>Broederbonder</td>
<td>Broederbonder</td>
<td>gaatjieponner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boardman</td>
<td>bundu basher</td>
<td>bundu basher</td>
<td>bundu basher</td>
<td>geelbek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boer</td>
<td>burgher</td>
<td>burgher</td>
<td>burgher</td>
<td>general dealer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boer</td>
<td>free burgher</td>
<td>free burgher</td>
<td>free burgher</td>
<td>genootoo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boer</td>
<td>bush mechanic</td>
<td>bush mechanic</td>
<td>bush mechanic</td>
<td>girl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>veeboer</td>
<td>buti (boetie)</td>
<td>buti (boetie)</td>
<td>buti (boetie)</td>
<td>garden girl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trekboer</td>
<td>bywoner</td>
<td>bywoner</td>
<td>bywoner</td>
<td>house girl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>canteen keeper</td>
<td>canteen keeper</td>
<td>canteen keeper</td>
<td>nurse girl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cape boy</td>
<td>Cape boy</td>
<td>Cape boy</td>
<td>wash girl etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cape Coloured</td>
<td>Cape Coloured</td>
<td>Cape Coloured</td>
<td>goffel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>capie</td>
<td>capie</td>
<td>capie</td>
<td>gom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>captain</td>
<td>captain</td>
<td>captain</td>
<td>(gopen)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cheesaa/chasa boy</td>
<td>cheesaa/chasa boy</td>
<td>cheesaa/chasa</td>
<td>grootbek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>chief</td>
<td>chief</td>
<td>chief</td>
<td>Hajee/Hadji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>choc</td>
<td>choc</td>
<td>choc</td>
<td>hairyback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>chommie</td>
<td>chommie</td>
<td>chommie</td>
<td>handlanger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Christenmensch</td>
<td>Christenmensch</td>
<td>Christenmensch</td>
<td>handsupper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>coloured</td>
<td>coloured</td>
<td>coloured</td>
<td>Harry's Angels</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
hawker
headman
heemraad
heer
herbalse
herdboy
Herstigte
Hindoo
Hollander
home boy / girl
hottentot
house mother/father
houtkop
huilebalk
I.D.B.
Ikey
imbongi
Indian
Indian (S.A.)
induna

intombi
inyanga
jaap, japi
jabroer
Jim Fish

John
joiner
jong
juffrou
Kaapenaar
kaaskop
kafferboetie
kaffir
raw kaffir
white kaffir
kaffir trader
kanniedood
kehla
kenner
kêrel
khaki
kind(ers)
kleintjie

klonkie
koelie
kooper
-kop
koppie walloper
korrelkop
koster
kraalhead
krans athlete
kransie
krev
kroeskop
kugel
kwedien
laatlammetjie
landdrost
leader
Leopard
loshotnot
maat
makoti
Malay, Cape
mampara
man
Mary
mason
-master
market master
pound master
Matie
mealie cruncher
meester
meid
meisie
meneer
mevrou
mies
miesies
mijnheer
miungu
Modjaji
moffie
mompara
moruti
moulvie
mullah
muti man
mynheer
Nat
neef, nefie
nie-blanke
non-black
non-European
non-franchise people
non-voter
non-white
nool
ntombazaan
ntombi
muisklergie agie
nyanga
okie/oka
oom
oorlam
ostrich farmer
ou
oubaas
ouderling
oudstryder
ouma
ouman
oupa
ousus
outa
outjie
overseas visitors
padkamper
pagter
pampeenkop
papbroek
papsnoek
Passenger Indian
pellie blue
Peruvian
piccanin
pikkie
plaa-
plaaasboer
plaaasjapie
plaaasseun etc.
plank sister
plattelander skaap
play white skebenga/u
[Political Commissioner] skeeloog
poor white skelfie
poppie skelm
predikant skelpel
Prog. skinderbek
P.R.U. skokkian queen
quaestor skolly
queen skutmeester
raadsheer small-
rain queen small father
shebeen queen small mother
skokiaan queen smeerlap
raindmaker smelter
rainmaker gold smous
rain queen lappiesmous
ramsammy vrugtesmous
samny soldoedie
rooike smous
rooinek vrugtesmous
roope soldoedie
rondanger spider, rock
rondloper spoorie
rooifie Springbok
roofie State President
rooinke stem vee
rooie stock farmer
rooie stoep farmer
rooie stoep-sitter
rorosh stormjaer
rondloper strandloper
sugar baron
sukkelaar
suliman
suster
swaer
selfout
takhaar
tannie ticket tannie
tend
sellout
setiger
tsettlaar
tsettler
shebeen queen/kingsie
shift boss
tochtist
sisi
tcc, tok,
tokkelok
toordokter
touleier
toty/tot
tradesman
transport driver
transport rider
trassie
trekboer
trekker
Voortrekker
Dorsland trekker
treknetter
tribesman
tronk volk
troopie/troopa
troopsluiter
tsotsi
Tukkie
uhlaka
uitlander
umfaan
umfazi
umfundisi
umnunzane/a
uncle
Uppie
Vaalpens
vabond
vat-en-sit woman
veeboer
veldcorbet
veld commandant
[veldwagmeester]
veggeneraal
verkrampte
arch verkrampte
super verkrampte etc.
verligte
vendue master, clerk
verdomde
verdomde Engelsman
verdomde rooinek
verdomde uitlander
verneuker, boere
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vetsak</th>
<th>Vrysta-ter</th>
<th>Witchdoctor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Voetganger</td>
<td>Wardmaster</td>
<td>Witsie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volk</td>
<td>Ware boer</td>
<td>Woltone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volksleier</td>
<td>Ware Afrikaner etc.</td>
<td>Woodcutter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volkies</td>
<td>Water fiscal</td>
<td>Young Turk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voorloper</td>
<td>White</td>
<td>Youth, the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voortrekker</td>
<td>White Kaffir</td>
<td>Zarp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vroteier</td>
<td>Winkler</td>
<td>Zoggie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vrou</td>
<td>Witbaas</td>
<td>Zoller</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vryer</td>
<td>Witkoppie</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
20. **Hunting, Weapons and War**

This fairly small category covers three separable fields, as its designation indicates.

'Hunting' in South African English does not have its specialised British sense of fox-hunting, nor the characteristic oppositions of meaning parodied in 'hunting, shooting and fishing.'

'Hunting' in the South African sense is reflected in hunt, hunting season, hunting horse and hunting dog and regrettably, in forms having reference to the extinction of game (shot out, hunted out). There is also the vocabulary of the skills of veldcraft: spooring, becreeping and bringing a gun op skoot. The game hunted, however, is not included here. It will be found in categories 6. Creatures, which includes numerous varieties of antelope etc. and 3. Birds.

The weapons are a heterogeneous collection - the Colonist's voor- and agterlaaier, sterloop and snaphaan on one hand, and on the other those of African tribesmen and townsmen: induku, mkonto, kicric, assegai and battle stick.

The vocabulary of warfare reflects, in the first place, the colonist's campaigns against indigenous peoples: crackers, rooibaadjies, burgher commandos and Kaffir Wars and fighting by and among African people of former times, eat up, wash spears.

More recent items of African provenance are faction fight, panga and battle-stick.

As far as 'European' warfare is concerned, this collection spans some of the vocabulary of the South African Wars of 1880-1881 and 1899-1902 (khaki, bittereinder, handsupper, joiner, uitlander, kruithoring, schans, concentration camp, Boer bank note, veld ponde, voëlvry), and some of the two world wars (the U.D.F., the Cape Corps, the song 'Kimberley Train', Up North, red oath, red flash/tab, bush cart).

There is a fair sampling of the vocabulary of more recent date of the present servicemen (ou.man, blouie, mindae, vasbyt, varkpun, roofie). A great deal of the National Service vocabulary, however, probably never gets into print and some, e.g. area, is omitted here.

Finally, category 20, includes some of the slang words to do with fighting (slat, get drukked and 'stick'), which will be found among the colloquialisms in category 10, as are some of those of the National Servicemen.

agterlaaier        baviaanboud        bobbejaanboud
amajoni            becreep            Boer
amasoja            becreeping cap     Boer banknote
Anglo Boer War    bittereinder       Boer War
assegai, b, vb.    Bloemfontein      Botha's Babes
[assegaibos         Appreciation     burgher
also pylhout]      blougat
baie dae           Blouie
battle stick

*See Appendix to Category 20
'bushman hunting'

bushcart

by-and-by

Cape Corps

commandant

Commandant-General looper

veld commandant

commandeer

commando

burgher commando

on commando

concentration camp

crackers

doppie

druk

to get drunked

eat up

faction fight

field cornet

handsupper

hunt

hunting

hunting dog

hunting horse

hunting season etc.

hunted out

Impala

impi

induku

joiner

Kaffir War

[kerrie]

khaki

kirie

Kimberley Train

knobkierie/kirrie

kruthoring

Commandant-General looper

mindae

mkonto

National Service

National Servicemen

National Service training

op skoot, to bring

oudstryder

paling out pâande

Permanent Force

P.F.

red -

red flash

red oath

red tabs

roer

rooibaadjie

rooinek

roofie

safari

sambok

skans/schans

shambok

shot out

shottist

sjambok

skerm

[slat]

snaphaen

[sneek kirie]

soldoeci

spears, to wash

spoor

sporcr

spooriing

Stellenbosch

sterloop

stick

troopie/troepie

U.D.F.

uitlander

Up North

usutu

varkpan

washbyt

veg-

Veg-Generaal

Veld and Vlei (School)

veld-

veldcraft

veld commandant

veld marshall

veldponde

Vierkleur

veelvry

voorlaier

Vryheidsoorlog

wash spears, to

[yellow belly]
Category 30. **Appendix**

Appended here are some of the terms given by Brigadier J. H. Picard in his article 'Roofies and Oumanne' in *English Usage in Southern Africa* Vol. 6 No. 1 May 1975: some of these will be found in this text without their specific military significance (these are indicated by square brackets).

- **balsak** - kitbag
- **bokkies** - infantry
- **hardegat** - most stubborn
- **indoenas** - the 'top brass'
- **[kas]** - steel locker
- **kettie** - (slang) rifle, (see cattie)
- **mammaoör** - Sergeant Major
- **mooi-moos** - 'step-out uniform'
- **pineapple** - a hand grenade
- **staaldakke** (steel roofs) - helmets
- **skietgat** - shooting range
- **[skrik]** - a very ugly specimen
- **[slagter]** - Medical Officer
- **tank jokkie** - a member of the Armoured Corps
- **[trommel]** - tin trunk
- **varkhok** - barrack room
- **vuilgat** - one of particularly dirty habits
- **vuiluil** - a useless soldier
21. 'Insects'

The list which follows would perhaps be more properly called 'goggas' because it contains creatures which even a non-specialist knows are not strictly insects. They are those everyday crawling, hopping and flying things found in houses and gardens in South Africa, some of them with names as colourful as themselves, and a handful of those which plague the farmer in this country. There has been no attempt at scientific or other grouping of this heterogeneous collection, apart from the inclusion in 11. Farming and Domestic Animals, of some of those which may be regarded as pests affecting the agriculturist or stock farmer.

| Argentine ant | jigger | rusper |
| army worm | kalander | sandveld grainworm |
| Australian bug | kaaro caterpillar | sandworm |
| baboon spider | koringkriek | [ silverfish] |
| baviaan spider | louse/luis/lice | songololo |
| blassop | mealie stalk borer | stinkbug |
| bobbejaan spinnekop | mealie rusper | tampan |
| bont tick | mealie rusper | tick |
| bosluis | miggie | blue tick |
| brommer | miskruier | red tick |
| Bushman rice | mopane worm | bont tick |
| button spider | muggie | toktokkie |
| Christmas bee / beetle | nunu | tsetse fly |
| C. M. R. beetle | oogpister | voetganger |
| 'fly', the | papies | wattle looper |
| gogga | 'piopter' | |
| gonya | praying/preying | |
| hoogpister | mantis | |
| Hottentot God | rooibaadjie | |
22. **Landscape and Places, Topography**

Most of the words placed together in this category will be found spread out among several others, notably 31. Travel and Vehicles, 26. Pioneering and Settlement and 11. Farming and Domestic Animals. They form, however, a natural group of their own. Many of these words for the features of the South African landscape are permanently enshrined as some of the most frequent elements in our place names (Category 27) and are among the earliest items which moved out of South African into 'other' English. Veld, koppie, kloof, krans, drift, poort, vlei, vlakte have been part of the vocabulary of travellers, missionaries, naturalists and those of the military who left memoirs, from the earliest times in this country. Some of them are of later date such as mine-dump, township and sinkhole: nevertheless it is as part of the South African scene that they are offered together here.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>aar</th>
<th>hoek</th>
<th>put</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>antheap</td>
<td>karroo</td>
<td>rand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ba(a)ken</td>
<td>kar(j)oo veld</td>
<td>rant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>backveld</td>
<td>kar(j)oo area</td>
<td>reef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>berg</td>
<td>kloof</td>
<td>saltpan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bergveld</td>
<td>kloof</td>
<td>sandveld</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bontveld</td>
<td>koppie, kopje</td>
<td>seekoegat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>built</td>
<td>kraal</td>
<td>sinkhole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bundu</td>
<td>kramat</td>
<td>sluit, sloot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bush, bushveld</td>
<td>[kramat]</td>
<td>soutpan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dam</td>
<td>krans</td>
<td>spruit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dirt road</td>
<td>laagte</td>
<td>thornland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>district road</td>
<td>leegte</td>
<td>township</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>divisional boundary</td>
<td>laeveld</td>
<td>trek path/pad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>donga</td>
<td>location</td>
<td>turn-off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dorp</td>
<td>lowveld</td>
<td>uitkyk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dorsland</td>
<td>mine-dump</td>
<td>up country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drift</td>
<td>mopane veld</td>
<td>veld</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duineveld</td>
<td>nek</td>
<td>vlakte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dwarswal</td>
<td>oog</td>
<td>vlakteveld</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elandveld</td>
<td>ouklip</td>
<td>vlei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eye</td>
<td>pan</td>
<td>ysterklip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>field, the</td>
<td>salt</td>
<td>zeekoegat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fontein</td>
<td>plaats</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gopse</td>
<td>platteland</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g(r)amadoelas</td>
<td>pont</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>highveld</td>
<td>poort</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
23. Languages, Peoples and Tribes

This category does not purport to be exhaustive. It includes some of the peoples and tribes of Southern Africa and their languages. Three of these, Boskop-, Kromdraai- and Swartkrans- (ape) man, refer to prehistoric human types. Others, e.g. Tambookie, are of mainly historical interest. Certain official ways of referring to persons in South Africa: White, European, non-White, non-European, Coloured etc. are also included. Most of these will also be found at 4b State.

With the languages are the artificial languages of restricted communication - Fanakolo and Chilapalapa (the so-called 'mine-kaffir' and 'kitchen kaffir') and the many ways of referring to Afrikaans from the Taal to the 'Afriks,' 'Boet' and 'Dutch' of the school room.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Afrikaans</th>
<th>European</th>
<th>Nguni</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Afrikanerism</td>
<td>non-European</td>
<td>non-European</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Afriks</td>
<td>Fanakolo</td>
<td>non-White</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anglikaans</td>
<td>Fingo</td>
<td>Nyanga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bantu language</td>
<td>[Gammatjie taal]</td>
<td>(m) Pondo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>basta(r)d</td>
<td>Griqua</td>
<td>Red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bastard/Baster,</td>
<td>blonipa (word)</td>
<td>Rehoboth Bastard/Baster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rehoboth</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basotho</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baster</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basuto</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bechuana</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bechuanaland</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bilingual</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>black</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boet</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boskop-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boskop man</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boskopoid</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Botswana</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>br(a)y n. &amp; vb</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bushman, 1 and 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cape Boy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cape Coloured</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cape Dutch</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chilapalapa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dutch 1, 2 and 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cape Dutch</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kitchen Dutch</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simplified Dutch</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simplified Dutch</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>European</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-European</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-European</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-White</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nyanga</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(m) Pondo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rehoboth Bastard/Baster</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hottentot (lang.)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[Indian (S.A.)]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaapse Hollands</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaffir</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaffir land</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaffir language</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kitchen kaffir</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mine kaffir</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kappie</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kitchen Dutch</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kitchen Kaffir</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khoi-Khoi(n)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kromdraai man</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KwaZulu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lapa language</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesotho</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malay</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mosotho</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Namaqua nation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ndebele</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ngoni</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swartkrans man</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swazi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taal, the</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tambookie</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tembu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vaalpens</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vaderland Volk</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xhosa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xosa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zimbabwe</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zimbabwean</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zulu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
24. Monetary Units, Measures and Time-Space Expressions

This list contains the names of units of currency whether obsolete, rix-dollar, schelling, tickey, or still in use, (rand); there are words pertaining to money in terms of payment (agterskot, goodfor, goodwill, opgaaf), of present or hand-out (basela, zakaat), or of colloquial reference (dosh, mail, greenie.)

Secondly it contains measures, many of which e.g. Cape foot, square rood, morgen etc. have become obsolete with the metrication of the South African system of weights and measures which has its own vocabulary, (mass, comma, cumec): some are dry measures (schepel, muid(sack), bag) or liquid (half-jack, leaguer, anker, aum.)

Apart from these precise measures of quantity, coinage, distance or capacity, South African English is rich in terms of indefinite time-space amount: the year voetsak, before the rinderpest, African time, hour, so-size, plus-minus, span, peanuts, zut, for Africa, which, though they are a far cry from the exact rate of foreign exchange for the rand, have a place in a collection of what might overall be loosely termed 'quantifiers.' [Note: the colloquial words or phrases in this category will be found repeated at 10. Expressions, Colloquialisms and Slang.]

| African time for | half-jack | rinderpest, before the |
| agterskot | hour | rix-dollar |
| anker | jack, half | rood, square- |
| aum | leaguer | scale |
| bag | length | schelling |
| basela | litre | scheepel |
| blueback | lobola | skilling |
| Boer banknote | mall | skutgeld |
| bomb | mass | so-size |
| comma | metrication | span |
| bucket | middelskot | stiver, stuiver |
| Cape foot | morgen | straight |
| doubljnie | muid | stuivat |
| erf | muid sack | takes me up to ... |
| for Africa | ndiblishi | tickey |
| 'flu | niks | long- |
| goodfor | nipinyane/a | sticky- |
| goodwill | opgaaf | tom |
| greenie | oulap | tot system |
| guider | peanuts | veld ponde |
| ha-ja | plus-minus | voetsak, the year |
| | pocket | voorskot |
| | sugar- | zakaat |
| | potwana | zoll |
| | rand | zut |
| | Kruger rand | |
25. Oriental South Africa

This category consists of some of the terms acquired from two Oriental communities in this country: the Malays, who have been established here since the eighteenth century and the Indians who came first to Natal in 1860. Few of the specifically Oriental terms appear to be in very general use: the names of Indian ingredients or dishes known particularly in Natal are a case in point, as is the religious terminology of the Cape Malays, some of which is familiar and to people round about Cape Town. Apart from chow in the colloquial combination bunny-chow there is no item here, as far as I know, which we owe to Chinese. Omitted from the text is the Afrikaans word tiap sometimes borrowed by English-speaking South Africans meaning a rubber stamp, which is presumably from the Chinese chop, a seal. The Malay dishes, sosaties and bobotie which appear at 7. Dishes and Cookery, are omitted from this category as being too thoroughly assimilated into South African English and Afrikaans for most people to remember their origin, as is baadjie, jacket, which is at 5. Clothing and Footwear.

In the text, for convenience, the Indian terms are placed together as a classified list containing items of clothing, foods and dishes, ingredients, spices, sweetmeats and a handful of heterogeneous items at the end. These are either briefly defined in the Indian Terms section or marked *(*) indicating that they will be found in their correct alphabetical point in the main body of the text.

Although certain items of the vocabulary of Islam are included - the Haj, zakaaat, moultie and madressa of the Indians, and the kramat, rami[p any, Chalifah/Kalifa and again Haj, Hadji of the Cape Malays - terms relating to Hindu worship are omitted: the pundal of the temple, thali of the bride and the other numerous terms concerning marriage ceremonies, which are at times encountered in such papers as the Sunday Times Extra, the Indian Leader and Graphic, and the magazine Fiat Lux are too rare in general use to be included here.

Arab
arad
atjar
bibi
biriani
blatjang
Bombay Merchant
breyani
bunny chow
burfee
butterbread
butter chilli

Chalifah
champals
chana flour
chillibite
choli
dhai
dhal
dholl
dhunia
dhunia

dhunia
dhunia
dhunia
dhunia

dhunia
dhunia
dhunia
dhunia

fish horn
gammat
garam/gurum masala
ghoo
ghomma
ghommedjie
goölery
goodself, your
goodwill
goolab jambo
gram flour
Haj

G. Subba Rao Indian Words in English (1969) cites this word in use in English as early as 1624 meaning seal or impression.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hindi/Urdu</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Dutch</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hajee / Hadji</td>
<td>lounge</td>
<td>rampi sny</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>halleem</td>
<td>madressa</td>
<td>[ramsammy]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hing</td>
<td>Malay</td>
<td>roti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indian (S.A.)</td>
<td>Mary</td>
<td>sambal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indian Council</td>
<td>masala</td>
<td>sambal-broek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indian parsley</td>
<td>masoor/musoor</td>
<td>Sammy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indian terms</td>
<td>methi</td>
<td>samoosa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indian Reformed Church</td>
<td>mithai</td>
<td>slaams</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jeero</td>
<td>moppie</td>
<td>somf/saunf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jumat</td>
<td>mouliye</td>
<td>soojee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kalya</td>
<td>[mullah]</td>
<td>toering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaparrang/ring</td>
<td>naan</td>
<td>toudang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>karem</td>
<td>papad</td>
<td>tuj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>katil</td>
<td>Passenger Indian</td>
<td>zakaat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khalifa</td>
<td>puri</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
26. **Pioneering and Settlement**

The terms listed here have largely to do with wagon-travel: the topographical features which added to the problems of pioneers in the early days in South Africa (kloof, drift, krans etc.) are to be found at 22. Landscape, Places and Topography, and the weapons of the savage tribes they encountered are at 20. Hunting, Weapons and War and at 2. African World. One or two obsolete 'travellers' terms' are included here, and the rust(roest) which all but beggared the Settlers of 1820.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>African hotel</th>
<th>kneehalter</th>
<th>trek chain</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>afterclap</td>
<td>laager</td>
<td>trekhou(w)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agterox</td>
<td>lager</td>
<td>touleier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agterkis</td>
<td>laer</td>
<td>voorkeis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agteros</td>
<td>leader</td>
<td>voorloper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antheap</td>
<td>location</td>
<td>voorslag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assegai</td>
<td>outspan</td>
<td>voorspan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biltong</td>
<td>[paint stone]</td>
<td>voortou</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>'buck'</th>
<th>party</th>
<th>Voortrekker</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>buckwagon</td>
<td>pass</td>
<td>~wagon/wa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bush</td>
<td>remshoen</td>
<td>[wait-a-while]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disselboom</td>
<td>riem</td>
<td>wagon chest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[diving goat]</td>
<td>roest</td>
<td>wakia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dorsland</td>
<td>rust</td>
<td>wapad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dorsland trekker</td>
<td>schoft</td>
<td>yokeskey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[field, the]</td>
<td>settlaar</td>
<td>[zeekoe spek]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[girdle of famine]</td>
<td>settler</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grahamstadter</td>
<td>span</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inspan</td>
<td>sweep</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kakebeenwa.</td>
<td>Thirstland Trek</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>katel</td>
<td>~Trekker</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kis</td>
<td>trek</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wa ~</td>
<td>trekker</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voor ~</td>
<td>trek gear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agter ~</td>
<td>~goed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gereedskap~</td>
<td>~wagon</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
27. Place Names

This category is subdivided from 27a - 1. The nouns are groups 27a - e.

a. Topographical nouns: this is the largest group and consists of features of the landscape, (some of them urban, marked), which are found usually in combinations in place names. Many of these are at 22. Landscape, Places and Topography.

b. Abstract nouns: few of these occur regularly, rust (rest) and hoop (hope) are probably the commonest though vrede (peace) occurs in a fair number of names: one not included in the text vreugd (joy) is also found in the unusual combination Rust-en-Vreugd.

c. and d. are names of Flora and Fauna. In the case of c. a plant name in a place name can usually be taken to be an indication of the surrounding vegetation or sometimes of a remarkable tree or clump of trees in the vicinity. Where one of the animal or bird names occurs it usually recalls an historical event (Ezeljacht) or a former or present habitat (Seacow lake, Baviaanskloof.)

e. General nouns: These include a large number of nouns which do not fall into any of the four major groups which do nevertheless occur regularly in place names; and two pronouns, mekaar (each other) and alles (everything) [also one (our), really a possessive determiner, in the text at hoop].

f. and g. These two groups contain the verbs: (f) uninflected verbs in place names are comparatively few but (g) participial forms, usually preceded by adverbs, are more numerous.

h. Directions: these are the equivalents of North, South, East and West and are found singly or in combination (Suid-Wes Afrika) preceding or following other names (Riebeek-oos, Wesdriefontein.)

i. and j. are the adjectives. These are normally to be found preceding nouns. [Koppiealleen and Boomkiealleen (alone) are exceptions.] The larger group (j) is of general modifiers - equivalent of long, short, narrow, round, beautiful, strong etc.. Group (j) consists of colour adjectives only: these are not very numerous but occur frequently and in many combinations. Some of the adjectives are found in their plain (predicative) form and their inflected attributive form, despite their attributive positioning in almost all structures, e.g. Droogas, Droëvlakte, Stilbaai, Stillewater, Langkloof, Langebaan.

k. Adverbs - Prepositions: most of these words function as both adverb and preposition depending on their use and position, and many of them as adjectives as well. They are therefore difficult to separate from each other:
These words in k. are frequently marked A/P/A, Adjective/Preposition/Adverb indicating that they may or do have double or multiple function.

1. These are definite articles, Afrikaans die, and Dutch de, overall equivalents of 'the' and het* which is definite determiner for neuter nouns. [The possessive determiner ons = our (see at hoop) could fit into this group.] *This occurs in early texts in the form 't.

All the elements or 'formatives' given in these lists, which contain only a selection of the thousands found in our place names, combine, and continue to be combined as new names are created, in various apparently grammatically stable 'shapes.' While onomastical detail would be out of place, the regular ways in which the formatives combine is perhaps of use and interest enough to merit a place here. They are accordingly simply listed below with one or two examples of each. [This material is a summary intended for the text of the experimental dictionary. It is treated in detail in Chapter IV 4.4]

1) A proper name, sometimes with a possessive suffix with a noun (usu. 27a or b.) thus:
   (a) Johannesburg, Hammanskraal.
   (b) Nelsrust, Niekerkshoop.

2) One or more abstract nouns:
   Benoudheid (qv), Rust-en-Vrede (qv), Verlatenheid (Desolation)
   Eensaamheid (loneliness), Rust en Vreugd (joy).

3) A single proper name:
   Elliot, Reitz, Durban, Ladysmith, Petrus Steyn [none of these appears in the text.]

4) Two common nouns of varying types:
   (a) Two topographical nouns from 27a: 
      Kranskop, Kloofnek, Velddrif, Strandfontein.
   (b) The name of a tree, plant or flower (27c) with a topographical (27a) noun:
      Leliesfontein, Keurboomsrivier, Melkbosstrand.
      [Occasionally single plant names occur: Wittebome, Suurants, Kiepersol, Haakdoring, all (qv).]
   (c) The name of a living creature (27d.) with a topographical (27a) noun:
      Wolwehoek, Sangrivier, Stompneusbaai, Kiewietskuit, Ystervarkfontein, all (qv). [As in the foregoing occasional single names of fauna exist as place names e.g. Loerie Springbok, Pofadder, Bleshoender, all (qv).]
(d) An abstract noun (27b) with a topographical noun (27a).
Vredefort, Hoopstad, Genadendal (Val of Grace),
Twyfelspoort (passage of doubt), all (qv).

(5) Adjective and Noun
(a) A 'colour' adjective (27j) with, usually, a topographical
(27a) noun:
Groenkloof, Witbank, Swartberg, Vaalkop, Bloukrans, all
(qv).
(b) An adjective signifying a quality other than colour (27i) with
usually a topographical (27a) noun:
Noupoort, Brakrivier, Kromdraai, Helderberg, all (qv)

[Adjectives of this more general kind are found in combination
with abstract nouns (27b) e. g. Goedgees (good faith),
Goodemoed (good courage, spirit), Langverdriet (long-lasting
sorrow).]

[Adjectives occasionally occur singly as place names - Rustig
(restful), Dankbaar (thankful), Hoopvol (hopeful), Behulpsaam
(helpful).]

(6) A noun, sometimes a proper noun, with a preposition following
or preceding it:
Waterval-onder, Welgemoed-boven, Underberg, Onder-
Smoordrift.

(7) A numeral, cardinal or ordinal, usually with a topographical
(27a) noun [numerals are not given in the text]:
Tweespruit (two), Vier-en-twintig-rivièr (twenty-four-rivers),
Driewerwe (three farmsteads, see werf), Eersterivier (first),
Derdheoek (qv) third).

(8) A noun or proper name with a direction (27h) preceding or
following it:
Noordhoek, Riebeek-Oos, both (qv).

(9) The name of a tribe or nation prefixed to a topographical (27a)
noun:
Hottentotskloof, Boesmanshoek, Fransmanshoek.

(10) A noun preceded by an article:
De Aar, De Doorns, Die Oog, Die Hel, Het Kruis.
[This structure occurs also in French names in South Africa, e. g.
La Mercy, Le Chasseur.]

(11) Structures containing Verbs (27f) are not common: they may
contain a pronoun as in Soekmekaar and Helpmekaar, an adverb
as in Keerom (turn round), nouns as in Hou Hoek, Hou Moed,
Soobatsfontein (beseech); or be negative imperatives such as
Twist-niet and Terg-niet.

(12) A verb participle (27g) preceded usually by an adverb (27k) is
not uncommon and is the only type of structure which regularly
does not contain a noun. The high frequency adverbs are
relatively few: wel, (well), ver- (distantly), wyd- (widely),
goed- (well), lang- (long), gou- (quickly), nooit- (never). Some of
the participles remain in their Dutch forms e.g. Welgelegen (found), Goedgevonden (found), Langverwacht (qv).

An adverb is not the only formative to combine with a participle, a pronoun in Allesverloren (lost), a negative particle in Nietverdient (not deserved) and a negative prefix Onverwacht (unexpected) are also found.

These twelve basic types with their variants, though quite numerous, may not be a complete picture of the structure of South African place names. It is noticeable however that many new names are formed, like the old ones, on these patterns.
27. Place Names

27a. Topographical Nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Place Name</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aar</td>
<td>gracht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amanzi</td>
<td>heuwel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baai</td>
<td>hoek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad</td>
<td>hoogte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bay, the</td>
<td>Kaap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>berg</td>
<td>kamma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Berg, the</td>
<td>Kar(r)oo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bosch</td>
<td>klip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bron</td>
<td>kloof</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bult</td>
<td>kolk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-*burg</td>
<td>kommetjie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ committees]</td>
<td>kop, koppie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dal</td>
<td>kopje</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dam</td>
<td>krans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*dorp</td>
<td>kuil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draai</td>
<td>laagte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drift</td>
<td>leegte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eye</td>
<td>*laan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fountain</td>
<td>modder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gat</td>
<td>nek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gesig</td>
<td>nt(h)aba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gezicht</td>
<td>oog</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

27b. Abstract Nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>benoudheid</td>
<td>kroon†</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heil</td>
<td>moed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hoop</td>
<td>rust</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

27c. Vegetation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vegetable</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>biesies</td>
<td>doring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bloem</td>
<td>eiken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boegoe</td>
<td>karee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boekeenhout</td>
<td>kraaibos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boom</td>
<td>melkbos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braambos</td>
<td>melkhout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dacha</td>
<td>naboom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dagga</td>
<td>palmiet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doorn</td>
<td>pampoen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

† Not included in the text: signifying 'crown' in a figurative sense, e.g. Viljoenskroon.
27d. Living Things

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>baviaan</td>
<td>kat</td>
<td>rhebok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bobbejaan</td>
<td>korhaan</td>
<td>renoster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bokke</td>
<td>kraai</td>
<td>seacow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brommer</td>
<td>leeu</td>
<td>seekoei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buffel(s)</td>
<td>loerie</td>
<td>slang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>das</td>
<td>maigas</td>
<td>springbok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eland</td>
<td>oester</td>
<td>tollie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esel</td>
<td>paarde/perde</td>
<td>tiger/tyger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ezel</td>
<td>papies</td>
<td>wolf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gans</td>
<td>pofadder</td>
<td>wolwe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hartebeest</td>
<td>pou(w)</td>
<td>ystervark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hazen</td>
<td>quagga</td>
<td>zeekoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kabeljou</td>
<td>reebok</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

27e. 'Other' Nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aand</td>
<td>jacht</td>
<td>plaats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alles</td>
<td>jag</td>
<td>plein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avond</td>
<td>kaffir</td>
<td>pos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baken/baaken</td>
<td>kant</td>
<td>pram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boland</td>
<td>koffie</td>
<td>schuur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braak</td>
<td>kraal</td>
<td>singel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brand</td>
<td>kruis</td>
<td>slagter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>breypaal</td>
<td>laager</td>
<td>sout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[committed(s)]</td>
<td>laer</td>
<td>stat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dag</td>
<td>mark</td>
<td>ster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dans</td>
<td>meisie</td>
<td>straat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>district</td>
<td>mekaar</td>
<td>swartland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drostdy</td>
<td>molen</td>
<td>tafel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duiwels</td>
<td>more</td>
<td>twist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rede</td>
<td>morgen</td>
<td>uitkyk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fort</td>
<td>niet</td>
<td>veeplaas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>halt</td>
<td>niks</td>
<td>veg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hek</td>
<td>[ons] see hoop</td>
<td>werf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hel</td>
<td>oord</td>
<td>wyn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heuning</td>
<td>paal</td>
<td>zwager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hof</td>
<td>party</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

27f. Verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>draai</td>
<td>terg</td>
<td>verloor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hou(w)</td>
<td>twist</td>
<td>verneuk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keer</td>
<td>verdwaal</td>
<td>waaai</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

27e. 'Other' Nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aand</td>
<td>jacht</td>
<td>plaats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alles</td>
<td>jag</td>
<td>plein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avond</td>
<td>kaffir</td>
<td>pos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baken/baaken</td>
<td>kant</td>
<td>pram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boland</td>
<td>koffie</td>
<td>schuur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braak</td>
<td>kraal</td>
<td>singel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brand</td>
<td>kruis</td>
<td>slagter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>breypaal</td>
<td>laager</td>
<td>sout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[committed(s)]</td>
<td>laer</td>
<td>stat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dag</td>
<td>mark</td>
<td>ster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dans</td>
<td>meisie</td>
<td>straat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>district</td>
<td>mekaar</td>
<td>swartland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drostdy</td>
<td>molen</td>
<td>tafel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duiwels</td>
<td>more</td>
<td>twist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rede</td>
<td>morgen</td>
<td>uitkyk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fort</td>
<td>niet</td>
<td>veeplaas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>halt</td>
<td>niks</td>
<td>veg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hek</td>
<td>[ons] see hoop</td>
<td>werf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hel</td>
<td>oord</td>
<td>wyn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heuning</td>
<td>paal</td>
<td>zwager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hof</td>
<td>party</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
27g. Participles

bedacht  gedacht  gelee  gelegen  verloren  verwacht  verwacht  verwag

27h. Directions

noord  noord  suid  suid  suid  suid  suid  zuid
oes  wes  wes  wes  wes  wes  wes  wes

27i. Adjectives

blink  hol  ou
brak  klaar  plat(te)
brede  klein  rond(e)
diep  koud  schoon
donker  krom  sooon
droë  kwaei  soet  sout
droog  lang  sterk
dwars  mooi  stiil(le)
goed/e  neder  suur
en  nou  verkeer(le)
groot  onderste  zuur
helder  onderste  zuur

27j. Colour Adjectives

blaauw  groen  swart
blou  oranje/orange  vaal
bonte  rood(e)  wit
glel  rooi  zwart

27k. A/P/A

agter  goed  nooit
binne  onder  ver
bo  om  voor
boven  [ over]  wel
buite  niet

27l. Articles

Die  Het
De  (t)
28. Plants

Not many plant names are part of the general vocabulary as opposed to the specialized vocabulary of botany and gardening, therefore relatively few South African plants appear in the list below. Some of these appear also in 2. African World, 16. Health, Moods, Medicine and Witchcraft, 11. Farming and Domestic Animals and some also in 32. Trees and Shrubs or 13. Flowers. Items preceded by hyphens are common suffixes found in plant names e.g. -bos, -kos, -biesies. Items followed by hyphens are common prefixes: boer-, hotnots-, rooi-. For the scientific names of plants in this text C. A. Smith The Common Names of South African Plants (1966 edition by E. Percy Phillips and Estelle van Hoopen) has been the principal scientific reference text.

*Note: Many plants included are not described in the text: these are simply illustrations of the use of certain prefixes e.g. bobbejaan-, boer-, esel-, lekkerruik-, prunk-, quagga-, Tambookie-, wyn- or a suffix such as -kweek, which is also a prefix and a noun in its own right.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Scientific Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aand-</td>
<td>buchu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aandblom</td>
<td>buffalo grass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aap-</td>
<td>buffels-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aapsnuif</td>
<td>buffelsdoring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aarbossie</td>
<td>buffelsgras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aas-</td>
<td>buffelshoring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aasblom</td>
<td>-bush</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aasbos</td>
<td>bitter bush</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aasbossie</td>
<td>blue bush</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aaskelk</td>
<td>cancerbush</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aasuintjie</td>
<td>castor oil bush</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>air plant</td>
<td>dacha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(kanniedood)</td>
<td>dagga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boetebos(sie)</td>
<td>dassie buchu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boeboes</td>
<td>dekriet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boegoe</td>
<td>devil's snuffbox</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boegoebos</td>
<td>devil's thorn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boego</td>
<td>-doring-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boerkaalblad</td>
<td>droog-my-keel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boerklawer</td>
<td>dubbeltjie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boerlusern</td>
<td>duiweltjie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boerturksvy</td>
<td>duweitjie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boesmans-</td>
<td>duwellsnuijdoos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boetebos</td>
<td>duweltjie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boetebos</td>
<td>elands-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boetebos</td>
<td>elandsboontjie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boeteboon</td>
<td>elandsdoorn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braambos</td>
<td>elandsertjie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braakbos</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braamboe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
elephant's food
elephant's foot
eselbossie
eselkoss
eseloor
eselgaana
ghaarrie
gif
gifbol
gifboom
gifdoring
guarrie boom/bos
haas
haasoor
haasgras
harpuisbos
heuningblom
hotnots
hotnots-buchu
hotnots-kukumakrankea
hotnotskoigoed
hotnotskougoed
hotnots-teee
Hottentot's bread
imfe
insangu
jakkals
jakkalsbossie
jakkalskoss etc.
Job's tears
jointed cactus
kaalblad/blaaz
Kaapse-
kaaffer-
kaafferboom
kaafferbrood
kaffer wag-'in-
bietjie
kaffir-
kaffir bread tree
kaffir bean
kaffir bread

4.2
kaffir manna
kaffir tea
kaffir tobacco
*kakiebos/khakibos
kanna (ganna)
kanniedood
kareemoer
-Kar(r)oo-
bitter Kar(r)oo
Kar(r)oo bitterbos
Kar(r)oo bush
Kar(r)oo thorn
katbos
katdoring
khanna
kikuyu
kirimoer
klapper 1 and 2
klein
koedoekos
koekoemakrankea-
kos
veldkos
koedoekos
olifantskos
slangkos
kruidjie-roer-my-nie
kuduoks
kukumakrankea
-lnweek-
kweekgras
rooikweek
strandkweek
leeu-
leeubekkie
leeubos(sie)
leeudoring etc.
lekkerruik-
lekkerruikbos(sie)
lekkerruikgras
lekkerruikheide
lekkerruikypie
lucky bean
mak dagga
manitok(kla

-manna
-boeramma
kaffirmanna etc.
matjiesgoed
mellbos
mieliegif
misbredie
-moer-
moerplantjie
moerworteltjie
kareemoer
'kirimoer
monkey bomb
monkey rope
muiss-
muisoor
Namaqua-
naas(ter)gal(bos)
enta(bossie)
old man's beard
olifants-
oulandgras
oumansbaard
oumeidsnuiidoos
palmiet
padda-
padda preekstoel
papies
perde-
-pram-
preekstoel, padda
Pride of-
Pride of de Kaap
Pride of Fransch Hoek
Pride of Table Mountain
pronk-
pronkertjie
pronkgras
quagga-
quaggakos
quaggakweek
quagga couch
.quick(grass)
fine quick
course quick
ramsammy grass
rhebok - stinkblaar - vetplant
rhenoster - stomp - vlakte
rhenosterbos - stompdoring - vlei-
Rhodes grass - strand - vleigrass
rooi - streep - vygje
roobos - streepalwyn - waal-
rooblaar - suring - waai-
rooiblos - suur - waaibossie
rooigras - suurgras - waaigras
'rooiblom - suuranys - waaier-
rooi - suurgras - waaierbossie
ruigte - swart- waaiertjie etc.
sand- sweat leaf 'wait-a-bit' (thorn)
satansbos - sweet cane waterblommetjie
seerocog- sweethearts waterreendjie
sinkings- sweet grass wit-
sinkingsbosse - taai- witchweed
sinkingswortel - taaiboom wolwegif(t)
skaap- taai - wyn-
skilpad- taaidoring wynbessie
skilpadblom - tambookie wynblommetjie
skilpadbos - tambookie grass wynklapper
slang- tambookietwak yster-
slangkop - tambookie-doring zuur-
slangkos - tambookietwak zwart-
snake apple - teff grass
snuffbox, devil's toa grass
soetriet - toa grass
sosatiebos - tol-
sout- tolletjie
soutbos - tontel-
soutganna - tontelbos
springbok- tontelblaar
steekappel - tulp
steekgras - twagrass
steen- unintjie
steenklawer - vaal-
steenste - vaderland-
ster- stickgrass - veldkor

* kakie/khaki klits # kakiekweek + bloutulp
kakie/khaki kweek fynekweek geeltulp
growweekweek rooitulp
29. Syntactic Categories

As far as possible all items which are not nouns have been assigned to a 'syntactic category' or word class (part of speech).

Of these the group of perhaps the greatest interest is 29vb which consists of verbs, verb phrases and a few pseudo verbs: the fact that about one hundred and eighty fall into this group is an objective sign that South African English is not simply a set of 'names for things'. A relatively large number of verbs then, may be taken as an indication that the South African element is more deeply entrenched than it would be in the case of a scattered 'top-dressing' of nouns and adjectives. Many of these verbs are of course borrowed, or borrowed in translation from Afrikaans or less frequently (call, sleep, borrow, stay well) from the African languages.

The translated structures or transliterated words are listed together at 10. , many of them being the verbs and verb phrases of 29vb.

29adj. is also a fairly large group containing not only genuine adjectives, namely those which will take degrees of comparison -er and -est or as intensifier such as 'very', but also modifiers of other types. There are group modifiers like skiet-en-donder, off the veld, out-of-town, up country, nouns which modify other nouns such as Afrikaner, Cape Dutch, and participial modifiers like eaten out, unwisecled, clapped.

Apart from noun modifiers of this type, there are very many more used attributively as modifiers. This is usually indicated in the text.

There are, furthermore, modifiers in this group which are normally not 'free' forms but which function as prefixes frequently in the names of plants e.g. hotnots-, boesmans-, (rooi-) or such items as voor- or agter- which, when used attributively, function as adjectives e.g. voor- or agter- slag, voor- or agter- kis etc.

All modifiers in the group are marked A attributive and P predicative, some are both: thus with vrot A, P, as with 'rotten', there are two possible positions: one can say 'The apple is vrot' predicatively, or 'It's a vrot apple' attributively. On the other hand a man can, attributively, 'be platsak' but could hardly describe himself as 'a platsak ou': just as 'The man is well' is generally accepted, but 'a well man' is substandard. This coding therefore is a key to usage: e.g. we are unlikely to meet 'an off the veld ox', a battle which 'is play-play', an 'omgekrap auntie', a 'full of mud foot', or a fool who 'is blierry.' Naturally, as with standard English, very many of the adjectives and other modifiers can work both ways.

29adv. On account of the structure of Afrikaans in which adjectival and adverbial forms usually do not differ some of the borrowed adjectives can be used adverbially and there is an overlap between this group and the preceding one. There is, however, a group, listed under Modal or Intensifier which includes what are still

1. Except possibly following 'only'.
sometimes called 'adverbs of degree' which are used, not as true adverbs, modifying verbs, but with adjectives or other adverbs.

29prn. This small group comprises both genuine and pseudo-pronouns. They have in common that they are used instead of the indefinite pronouns 'someone', 'somebody' etc. or in the case of niks, peanuts and out of 'very little' or 'nothing.' The avoidance of direct second-person pronouns by many South Africans is discussed in the text at the entry headed third person form of address.

29prep. These are all English prepositions or prepositional phrases used in ways which are non-standard English, carried over from Afrikaans e.g. by (from Afrikaans by) = at or beside; under (from Afrikaans onder) = among; over (from Afrikaans oor) = about etc.. The phrases e.g. 'on the moment', 'I'm on my nerves', 'use X in place of Y', 'she smacked him through the face' are all translations or transliterations of Afrikaans structures and are mostly found in sub-standard usage. The out of the combinations beaten-, eaten-, tramped- and shot-out is translated from the Afrikaans prefix uit-.

29red. Redundancies listed here are most of them discussed in the text as separate entries and in the entry headed redundancies. Omissions are treated as a whole in the omissions entry with certain cross references to other items.

29vb Verbs and verbal phrases.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abba</td>
<td>can't complain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ask</td>
<td>classify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assega(ali)</td>
<td>reclassify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bake</td>
<td>come to hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baklei</td>
<td>commandeer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ban</td>
<td>complain, can't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>becreep</td>
<td>cottch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bell</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bite one's teeth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boekte vat</td>
<td>deproclaim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bog</td>
<td>divorce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bore</td>
<td>doesn't/don't want to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[A.E.] borrow</td>
<td>don't hope so</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braai</td>
<td>don't hope so</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>braak</td>
<td>divorceme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bri, brei, brey</td>
<td>drink (pills, medicine)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brei riems</td>
<td>dwaal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring op skoot</td>
<td>excuse me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brom</td>
<td>fall pregnant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bry</td>
<td>farm with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bundu-bash</td>
<td>forget</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[A.E.] call</td>
<td>give</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>came/come there</td>
<td>go black</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>camp</td>
<td>goef</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- 174 -
kraal
kuier
kurvey
laager
lead water
learn
lend
let
loer
loop
mooi loop
maak gou
make
make a plan
moan
moera
mooi loop
must
[never]
[not so?]
off load
off saddle
opsaal
op skoot, to bring
outspan
pack in, 1 and 2
pack out, 1 and 2
pick out
pick up weight
plak
plan, make a
play
play sport
play white
prop
pronk
reclassify
release
rest
ride
ride in
ride flat
ride on water
row
ru(c)k
ruk
run, veld
sala kahle
scandal
scare
schlenter
scoff
scoffle/skoffle
shambok
shine through
shoot out
show through
sit up
sjambok
skei
skel
skinder
skit/skut
skop
skop lawaai
skrik
slag
slat
sleep,
[A.E.] sleep
sluk
smaak
smear
smell out
smoor
suprise
snik
sny, 1 and 2
span, in
span, out
spog
spoor
sport, play
stay
stay well
steek
stick
stick away
stick fast
stick on
stokclesdraai, play
stokvel, play
sukkel
take out
takes me up to...
telling you, I'm
thank you
throw
throw dead
throw wet
throw with
throw bones
toor
trep
try for white
upsaddle
vasbyt
vastrap
verneuk
voorloop
vrek
vroetel
vry
waai
wait on
want to, doesn't want to
wash spears
water, ride on
wish you, to
with, throw
woel
work on his/your/my
nerves
worry
zoll
zone
rezone

[ ] pseudo verbs
[A.E.] usually African English
29 adj. Adjectives, Noun modifiers and Group modifiers

adjective with infinitive P

*Africa, for
Afrikaans A, P
Afrikaner A
gat A
bang P
beaten out A, P
beneek(te) A, P

best A
binne A
blou, blauw A
bleddy A
blerry A
blind A, P
blink A
boere- A
boesmans- A
bont A, P
bos- A
botter- A
brak A, P
brede A
busy (with) P
Cape Dutch A, P
clapped P
cronky A, P
deadstil P, [adv. m]
deurmekaar P
dik A, P
dom A, P
Dutch A, P
eaten out A, P

egte A
far A
fies P

*for Africa
fris A, P
full of ... P
haasbek P, [adv. m]
herstigte A
holbol A
hotnoots- A
hunted out A, P

improved A, P
jags A, P
kaal A, P [adv. m]
Kap medium P, kapdeur P
kragdadig(e) A, P
kroes(ie) A, P
moeg P
mooi A, P
naar P
off colour A, P
old fashioned A, P
omgekrap P
ou A
out-of-town A
overmass P
pap A, P
papnat P
parmantig A, P [adv. m]
plat A, P
platsak P
play-play A
poegaai P
raw A, P
red, 1 A, P
red, 2 A P
right, not P
salted A, P
schimmel A
scurvy A, P
shu-shu A, P
skeef P [adv. m]
skeeloog P
skelm A, P
skiet-en-donder A
skop-skiet-en-donder A
skut- A
slap A, P

well-improved
slyt A
snaaks A, P
snide A
snyde A
snoep P (A)
snot-en-trane A, P
so size P
sour A, P
splinter new A, P
steeks P (A)
stomp(-) A, P
suur- A
swak P, A
sweet A, P
taai A, P
tagati P
tamaai A
thick A, P
toe P
too good P
tرامped out A, P
tweetalig P
unwisselde P, A
up country A
taal- A
vatterig P
veld, off the P [adv. place]
veld- A
veld-reared A, P
verdorne A
verkram P
verkrampte A
verlep P
verlig P
verligte A
vies P
voëlvry P
volksvreemde A
voor- A
vrot A, P
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adverb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wait-a-bit</td>
<td>a little, bit of a wait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>warm</td>
<td>warm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>woes</td>
<td>woes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ware</td>
<td>ware</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wissel</td>
<td>wissel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A = Attributive.  
P = Predicative  
[adv.m] = also used as adverbials of manner  
bos- hyphen signifies noun modifier or adjective usually found as a prefix.

* Post-modifier

### 29adv. Adverbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adverb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>deadstill</td>
<td>dead still</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dikbek</td>
<td>dikbek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haasbek</td>
<td>haasbek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaal</td>
<td>kaal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaalgat</td>
<td>kaalgat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>langevacht</td>
<td>langevacht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>langbek</td>
<td>langbek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lang</td>
<td>lang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>langbek</td>
<td>langbek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>off the veld</td>
<td>off the veld</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parmantig</td>
<td>parmantig</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Modal Adverbs and Intensifiers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adverb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>again</td>
<td>again</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>already</td>
<td>already</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>binne</td>
<td>binne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>darem</td>
<td>darem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doer</td>
<td>doer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hellout</td>
<td>hellout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>helluva</td>
<td>helluva</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maar</td>
<td>maar</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adverb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>moerava</td>
<td>so a little</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mos</td>
<td>mos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>never</td>
<td>never</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>now</td>
<td>now</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>now-now</td>
<td>now-now</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rather</td>
<td>rather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rather very</td>
<td>rather very</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>so</td>
<td>so</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 29prn. Pronouns and Pseudo-pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pronoun</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>alles-</td>
<td>alles-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mekaar</td>
<td>mekaar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all two</td>
<td>all two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niks</td>
<td>niks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-and them</td>
<td>-and them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or so</td>
<td>or so</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baie</td>
<td>baie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peanuts</td>
<td>peanuts</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 29prep. Prepositions and Prepositional Phrases

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>by</td>
<td>by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>otherside</td>
<td>otherside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on water, ride</td>
<td>on water, ride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in place of</td>
<td>in place of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out-</td>
<td>out-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>through</td>
<td>through</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(the face)</td>
<td>(the face)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in the/out of the road</td>
<td>in the/out of the road</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out beaten</td>
<td>out beaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>under</td>
<td>under</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>off the veld</td>
<td>off the veld</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out eaten</td>
<td>out eaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with</td>
<td>with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on ... nerves</td>
<td>on ... nerves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out tramped</td>
<td>out tramped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on the moment</td>
<td>on the moment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out shot</td>
<td>out shot</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 29red. Redundancies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Redundancy</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>busy</td>
<td>busy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have to</td>
<td>have to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>again</td>
<td>again</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but</td>
<td>but</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>little</td>
<td>little</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>already</td>
<td>already</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>darem</td>
<td>darem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maar</td>
<td>maar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>article, a, the, an</td>
<td>article, a, the, an</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finished and (klaar)</td>
<td>finished and (klaar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mos</td>
<td>mos</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* This item appears in the text of the dictionary.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prefix</th>
<th>Suffixes:</th>
<th>Miscellaneous</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>negative</td>
<td>now</td>
<td>now-now</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>no</td>
<td>(sugar)diabetes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(yellow)jaundice</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Omissions:**
- articles
- ed

**Suffixes:**
- goed
- heid
- ie

**Miscellaneous:**
- Possessive suffix
- Pronoun/noun
- 3rd person singular verb inflection
- 're

- Sommer
- Still
- What
- Yet
- Yellow jaundice
- Horse riding

- Only
- Rather
- Small/little
- So

- Prefix there-
30. **Trade, Mining and Law**

This category has mainly to do with buying and selling, including some of the legal terminology associated with these and, in a limited way, with the language of mining. The buying and selling is of many different kinds and importance: there is large scale trading; **Holland Street**, the **Kaffir Circus** of the London Stock Exchange; **Border Industry**, the **S.A.B.S.** Smaller scale traders are the **algemene handelaar**, **wirkler** or **kaffir trader**, and the itinerant **transport rider**, **kurveyor**, **boer-verneuker**, **smous**, **fish cart hawker** or **vegetable ’sammy.’** The vocabulary of buying and selling in the early days includes the **vendusie** with its **vendue-master**, -**rolls** and -**clerks**, its **opslag-opslag** bidding and **strykgeld**; the **negotie winkel**, the **Kaffir Fair** and the **passer**. More modern times give us the **stock fair** with its obligatory **no objection permits**, and such emporia as the **butchery**, **bottle store**, **tea room** or **muti shop** - even the illegal **dagga-running** and still current **I.D.B.** Those places whose trade is to offer refreshments, particularly liquid refreshments are also reflected here, the **canteen** of earlier days, the **beer hall**, **koffiehuis**, eating house, **lounge**, **shebeen** (and the somewhat anomalous **tea room**), as are certain types of trading licences (**general dealer’s**, **hawker’s**, **tea room keeper’s**)

The law and procedures of sale, especially land sale and conveyancing are represented here in such terms as **voetstoots**, **rouwkoop**, **kustingbrief**, **bond**, **erf**, **ba(a)ken**, **stand**, **proclaim a township** or **improved** land. The types of historical land tenure, **guit-loan place** etc. are to be found at 17, **Historical Administration**.

Methods of payment, some of which are found elsewhere, at **voorskot**, **agterskot**, **middelskot**, **kontant** and **lay-by.**

In the administration of estates the **Boedelkamer** of former days has been replaced by the Master of the Supreme Court, part of whose function is described at ’uitkoop.’

Few actual articles of commerce are listed, only such unusual items as ’Caper’ tea, **wattle**, **tigers-eye** and **aloe-juice** are found here. The vocabulary of the Diamond Fields and gold mines contains, as does the law of sale, some historical terms, such as **bewaarplaats**, **tailings**, **mynpacht**, **baby**, **dolly**, the dreaded **Breakwater** in wait for the **I.D.B.** and the **Diamond Trade Act** (or **I.D.B. Act**) of 1882 which called a halt to indiscriminate trading. Here are the **koppie-wallopers**, **koopere** and **fossickers** of the early days in The Fields, the **dry diggings**, the blue and yellow ground, the scotch carts and stampers and beside them are the **shift boss**, **boss boy**, **induna**, **cheesa boy**, **amagoduka** (migrant labourers), **compounds**, **cocomans**, **mine-dumns** and **kimberlite**, of modern mining.

The language of diamonds themselves from the **blink-klip** found by the wandering Hottentot to the **Koh-I-Noor** is rich in colourful terminology: the **gonivahs**, **schlenter**, **snyde diamonds** and glasses of the ’bad old days’ and the **grit**, industrial diamonds, **off-colour**, melée, stones and fancies of the organised trade today.

* The digger’s term **cappy** has recently come to light.
The more esoteric terminology of mining is beyond the province of this text but it is hoped that Category 30. provides an interesting cross-section of the varying vocabulary of business in South Africa.

aandag | eating house | kustingbrief
afslag | eGoli | lappiesmous
agterskot | erf | lay by
algemene handelaar | Fair, | lounge
ali shop | Kaffir Fair | mailship/boat
aloe juice | Stock Fair | melée
amagoduka | fanakalo | middelskot
Apple Express | fancy | mine-dump
Arab | Fields, the | muti shop
auntie | fish cart | mynpacht
ba(a)ken | fossick | negotie winkel
baby | fish horn | no objection permit
bag | general dealer | off-colour
bakkie | general dealer's licence, store etc. | off sales
banket | glassie | opslog
beershall | gonivah | overseas markets
bewaarplaats | goodwill | pagter
blinkklip | grease table | plaas, bewaar
blue ground | Greek shop | pocket, sugar etc.
Boedelkamer | grit | Rand
boere verneuker | handle off | (randlord)
Bombay Merchant | hawker | reef
bombella train | hawker's licence | Rent-a-bakkie
bond | Hollard Street | rouwkoop
border industry | hotel | S.A.B.S.
boss boy | I.D.B. | Sakekamer
botel | I.D.B. Act | sammy
bottle store | induna | schlenter
Breakwater | industrial diamond | scotch cart
butchery | kaffir fair | [ semels]
canteen | Kaffirs (shares) | shebeen
'Caper' tea | Kaffir Circus | shebeen trade
cappy | kaffir trader | shift boss
cheesa boy | kaffir truck | sinkhole
cheesa stick | kaffir eating house | slenter
[cocopan | kimmerlite | smallworking
[ Company, the | klip | smous
compound | blinkklip | goldsmous
coolie shop |ダイヤモンド | lappiesmous
dagga shop | koffiehuis | snide diamonds
diamond | kontant | snide diamonds
diamond running | kooper | span (men)
dolly | koppie walloper, walloping
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stamp, battery</th>
<th>Tickey snatching</th>
<th>Vendue clerk</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stamper</td>
<td>Tickey-line</td>
<td>Vendue roll</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stand</td>
<td>Tiger's eye</td>
<td>Vendue account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stokvel/fel</td>
<td>Togt</td>
<td>Vendue note</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stones</td>
<td>Tot system</td>
<td>Vendusie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strykgeld</td>
<td>Township</td>
<td>Verneuker, boer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sugar baron</td>
<td>Township, to proclaim a VETSAK</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swakara</td>
<td>Transport driver/ing</td>
<td>Voetpad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tailings</td>
<td>Transport rider</td>
<td>Voetstoots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tea room</td>
<td>Transport, riding</td>
<td>Voorskot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tearoom keeper's licence</td>
<td>[trekishing]</td>
<td>Wattle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tickey-</td>
<td>Uitkoop</td>
<td>Winkel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tickey 'phone</td>
<td>Unimproved</td>
<td>Winkler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tickey shop</td>
<td>Vendue</td>
<td>Yellow ground</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
31. Travel and Vehicles

This category contains words pertaining to means and modes of travelling both old and new. As is to be expected a major part of the vocabulary concerns wagon travel, wagon types and equipment, and draught animals. This is accordingly the first section. A full alphabetised list follows the sections.

(1) Wagon Travel

**Wagons:** buckwagon, Grahamstadter, kakebeenwa, trekwagon, Voortrekker wagon, -wa (bokwa, ossewa, kakebeenwa, trekwa etc.).

**Gear:** afterclap, agterslag, bucksail, disselboom, gereedskapkis, katel, -kis (agterkis, voorkis, wakis, gereedskapkis), remskoen, sweep, tent, trek gear, trekgoed, voorslag, wagonchest, wagon-tent.

**Draught Oxen and Tackle:** after-ox, agteros, span, trek-ox, voorspan. Disselboom, trekchain, trektou, skey-yoke, yoke skey, skey, neck stop, stop, voortou.

**People:** agterryer, leader, touleier, voorloper, [kurveyor, transport rider.]

**Verbs:** inspan, outspan, voorloop, [kurvey].

(2) Riding and Horse-drawn Conveyances

Cape Cart, scotch Cart, Spider (American spider, German spider, four-wheeled spider), opsaal, upsaddle, offsaddle, knee-halter.

(3) Stopping-off Places, Rations, Journeys.

Outspan, laager, African hotel, rest camp, hotel, hotel (see 4b), Nagmaal tent, padkos, safari, [caravaning], overseas trip, hour as a measure of distance and skof/schoft/skoft a leg of a journey.

(4) Roads, ancient and modern, rural and urban.

-pad, trekpad, wapad, drift, poort, pont.

National road, District road, beton, divisional boundary, dirt road, turnoff, ompad, middelmannetjie, dwarswal, bundu, Kapse draai.

Hou links, hou regs, ry versigtig, traffic circle, robot, ticket tannie.

(5) Modern Travel

32. Trees and Shrubs

Only a few of the numerous trees and shrubs of South Africa are listed here, and some of them appear as well in category 28. Plants if they are shrubs of small growth. The items followed or preceded by hyphens are some of those prefixes or suffixes which occur frequently in the names of Flora generally e.g. colours "rooi-", "wit-", "swart-" or common suffixes such as "boom" or "doring." Those of this category which are timber trees will be found again as the names of numerous woods in category 18. House and Garden, Building and Buildings, and occasional names of shrubs used medicinally will appear at 16. Health, Moods, Medicine and Witchcraft.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>American aloe</th>
<th>droog-my-keel</th>
<th>kiaat</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>anaboom/tree</td>
<td>flat crown</td>
<td>kiepersol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apiesdoring</td>
<td>garingboom</td>
<td>kinkelbossie</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assegaibos</td>
<td>geelhout(boom)</td>
<td>kippersol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assegaaiwood</td>
<td>gwarrie boom/bos</td>
<td>klapper</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>basboom</td>
<td>gwarrie</td>
<td>knobwood</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baster-blackwood</td>
<td>haakdoring</td>
<td>kokerboom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blinkbaarboom</td>
<td>hakea</td>
<td>kraaibos</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bloodwood</td>
<td>halfmens</td>
<td>kremetart(boom)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bloubos(sie)</td>
<td>hard pear/peer</td>
<td>kreupelboom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bloukom/bloekom</td>
<td>harpiaios</td>
<td>lemonade tree</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bluebush</td>
<td>hotnotesboerboom</td>
<td>lucky bean</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bluegum</td>
<td>ironwood</td>
<td>mak-boerboom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boekenhout</td>
<td>kaffir-/er-</td>
<td>maroela</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boerboon</td>
<td>kaffir honeysuckle</td>
<td>melkboom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boom, kaffer</td>
<td>kaffir plum</td>
<td>melkhoutboom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>denne etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td>milkwood</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bottlebrush</td>
<td>kaffir wag-‘n-bi etjie</td>
<td>modjadi palm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brandhoutboom</td>
<td>kamassiehout</td>
<td>monkey orange</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broodboom, kaffer</td>
<td>kameeldoring</td>
<td>monkey thorn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>camelsfoot</td>
<td>kamnassiehout</td>
<td>mopani tree</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>camelthorn</td>
<td>kankerbos</td>
<td>naboom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cancerbush</td>
<td>karreeboom</td>
<td>ollifants-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cape honeysuckle</td>
<td>karreehout</td>
<td>onderbos</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>castor oil bush</td>
<td>Karoo wilg/willow</td>
<td>ou-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cream of tartar tree</td>
<td>[ka福特ing]</td>
<td>ouihow</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daneboom</td>
<td>Kei apple</td>
<td>pear/peer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>denneboom</td>
<td>kersbos</td>
<td>peperboom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-doring-</td>
<td>kershout</td>
<td>pepper tree</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kameeldoring</td>
<td>kersiethout</td>
<td>perde-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haakdoring</td>
<td>keurboom</td>
<td>Port Jackson willow</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doringboom</td>
<td>khakibos</td>
<td>pram-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doringbos</td>
<td>khakiklits</td>
<td>protea</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>driedoring</td>
<td>khaki weed</td>
<td>pylhout</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>Afrikaans</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>Afrikaans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resin bush</td>
<td>rhenosterbos</td>
<td>stinkhout</td>
<td>waaier-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rhenosterbos</td>
<td>rhenosterbos</td>
<td>stone pine</td>
<td>waboom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhodesian teak</td>
<td>Rhodesian teak</td>
<td>sugar bush</td>
<td>wagonwood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[riet</td>
<td>dekviir</td>
<td>suikerbos</td>
<td>wag-'n-bietjie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>soetviir</td>
<td>swart-</td>
<td>wattle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolbos</td>
<td>rolbos</td>
<td>swartdoring</td>
<td>waxberry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rollbush</td>
<td>rollbush</td>
<td>swarthaakdoring</td>
<td>wild fig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rooi-</td>
<td>rooi-</td>
<td>swarthout</td>
<td>windmakerbos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rooiels</td>
<td>rooiels</td>
<td>taalbos</td>
<td>wit-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rooihout</td>
<td>rooihout</td>
<td>taaidoring</td>
<td>wit els</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rooikrans (willow)</td>
<td>rooikrans (willow)</td>
<td>-thorn-</td>
<td>witgatboom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saffraan</td>
<td>saffraan</td>
<td>tierhout</td>
<td>witteboom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>satansbos</td>
<td>satansbos</td>
<td>tombotiboom</td>
<td>wonderboom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seringboom</td>
<td>seringboom</td>
<td>tontelbos</td>
<td>yellowwood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>silver tree</td>
<td>silver tree</td>
<td>Transvaal teak</td>
<td>yesterday, today and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sneezewood</td>
<td>sneezewood</td>
<td>umzimbete</td>
<td>tomorrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sosatiebos</td>
<td>sosatiebos</td>
<td>vaderland-</td>
<td>ysterhout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spekboom</td>
<td>spekboom</td>
<td>vingerpol</td>
<td>yster-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
33. **Weather**

It is surprising that in rain-, drought- and climate-conscious South Africa the words associated with the weather itself should be so few. Terms associated with water catchment will be found listed at 11. *Farming and Domestic Animals*, and the measure cumec at 24. *Monetary Units, Measures and Time-Space Expressions*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bergwind</td>
<td>mistrain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>berg-ish</td>
<td>monkey's wedding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cape Doctor</td>
<td>'Oubaas'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dustdevil</td>
<td>paraffin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jakkalstrou</td>
<td>[pula]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kar(r)oo, Lowveld,</td>
<td>[shu-shu]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Highveld climate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Metricated cusec.
34. **Writing, Education and the Arts**

This small category is a 'mixed bag' containing the terms used for forms at school (class, standard, sub-standard), for examinations (Matriculation, Taalbond) and for particular types of schools or institutions (farm school, Veld and Vlei School, Madressa, platoon school, private school.)

Some of the terms associated with bilingualism and the Afrikaans language are here (language movement, Taalbond, Taaltoets, tweetalig, Afrikanerism, Afrikaans farm) and the children's slang Afrix and Boet, along with their usage of 'lear!', dop, schoolbag and bookbag. In 'Higher' education are the long standing colloquial names of some of the Universities and their students and institutions (NUSAS, ASB, jool) and such personages as Rector and house mother and/or father.

Here too are such bodies as H.S.R.C., C.S.I.R, S2A3, and paleontological finds: the Stellenbosch culture and the prehistoric ape men of Boskop, Kromdraai and Swartkrans.

Heterogenous items are the snelskrif of commerce, the aftelrympie of the poets, and last but not least the writers of the thirties and the sixties, dertigers and sestigers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Afrikaans farm</th>
<th>Afrikanerism</th>
<th>Afrix/Afriks</th>
<th>aftelrympie</th>
<th>A.S.B.</th>
<th>Bantu Education</th>
<th>bilingual</th>
<th>[Bloemfontein Appreciation]</th>
<th>Boet</th>
<th>bookbag</th>
<th>Boskop</th>
<th>Boskopoid,</th>
<th>Boskop man</th>
<th>class</th>
<th>conditional exemption</th>
<th>C.S.I.R.</th>
<th>dertiger</th>
<th>dop</th>
<th>exemption, conditional exemption, Matriculation</th>
<th>farm school</th>
<th>house mother/father</th>
<th>H.S.R.C.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Afrikaans farm</td>
<td>Afrikanerism</td>
<td>Afrix/Afriks</td>
<td>aftelrympie</td>
<td>A.S.B.</td>
<td>Bantu Education</td>
<td>bilingual</td>
<td>[Bloemfontein Appreciation]</td>
<td>Boet</td>
<td>bookbag</td>
<td>Boskop</td>
<td>Boskopoid,</td>
<td>Boskop man</td>
<td>class</td>
<td>conditional exemption</td>
<td>C.S.I.R.</td>
<td>dertiger</td>
<td>dop</td>
<td>exemption, conditional exemption, Matriculation</td>
<td>farm school</td>
<td>house mother/father</td>
<td>H.S.R.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ikey(s)</td>
<td>schoolbag</td>
<td>snelskrif</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jool</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Afrix and Boet, along with their usage of 'lear!', dop, schoolbag and bookbag. In 'Higher' education are the long standing colloquial names of some of the Universities and their students and institutions (NUSAS, ASB, jool) and such personages as Rector and house mother and/or father.

Here too are such bodies as H.S.R.C., C.S.I.R, S2A3, and paleontological finds: the Stellenbosch culture and the prehistoric ape men of Boskop, Kromdraai and Swartkrans.

Heterogenous items are the snelskrif of commerce, the aftelrympie of the poets, and last but not least the writers of the thirties and the sixties, dertigers and sestigers.
4.3 Labelling for a Dialect Dictionary

Devising a scheme for labels and abbreviations for any type of dictionary is inevitably a problem. It involves, just as does the choice of items for inclusion discussed at 4.1, and in Chapter I (1.1, 1.2 and 1.3) decision and personal judgement on the part of the lexicographer whose views may differ widely from those of his readers or his peers. Virginia McDavid in Variations in Dictionary Labeling \(^1\) ably demonstrates over a fair-sized sample of controversial items such as *aggravate* (for 'annoy'), *awfully* (for 'very'), *around* (for 'about') *anxious* (for 'keen'), that the makers of six different dictionaries differ materially one from another in the choice of labels for these items, and in whether they see fit to label them at all. Too much labelling of course is wearisome and time-consuming for the user and too little, as in bilingual or some so-called pocket dictionaries, can make for a text full of pitfalls. There is too, the related question of how short these labels can be without being irritatingly cryptic to the reader.

These questions, obviously, must apply to the work of the dialect lexicographer also, and are for him particularly awkward. Hedging any word about with a number of labels, provisos and restrictions may lead him up the forbidden path of prescriptivism, while avoidance of labelling procedures may be regarded as, and is I think, irresponsibility towards his readers. Apart from this, over-shortness of the labels or other signals can create a positive barrier between a text and a reader, as continual back reference to what an abbreviation stands for can be a very real source of frustration and annoyance. It is, I feel, therefore, of the utmost importance to keep the abbreviations long enough to be as far as possible transparent to the reader, while meeting the actual raison d'être of abbreviations, saving space while retaining clarity.

There is a curious anomaly in the reader-writer situation in the case of a dictionary of any kind. On the one hand lexicography must surely be the most formal of the literary arts, that one in which there is least real contact between the writer and reader; on the other hand few kinds of writing can more speedily enrage and frustrate a reader than bad, obscure or careless lexicography, particularly that studded with unintelligible bits and pieces of labelling.

1. **Lexicography in English** (see McDavid R.I. and Duckert), p. 187-208.
Labelling is essentially a practical business, providing information about an item; it is also a signalling system from writer to reader, and therefore a means of acknowledging their common humanity even within the formal context of lexicography. For both these reasons the system must work, and fulfil the functions for which it has been designed: firstly it must provide the information as fully, and yet as economically, as possible and secondly it must do so in such a way as to provide for the reader the maximum usefulness with the minimum of bother.

The labelling and abbreviations system is divided into three sections for the sake of convenience and of following the general classificatory principle employed in the text as a whole.

The First Section is **Linguistic Functions** consisting of

(a) **Word Classes** (Parts of speech)
(b) **Other linguistic signals**

- e.g. attributive, cognate, participle, diminutive, imperative, prefix, suffix etc. all of which are of sufficient importance to merit a category separate from the parts of speech.

The Second Section is **Usage Signals** consisting of

(a) **Status labels**

- e.g. Colloquial, Objectionable, Historical etc. with the sub-section **Sectional** which tentatively aims at covering the jargon or 'sectional language' of certain groups, e.g. Building Trade and Plumbing, the Army and Mining.

(b) **Other.** These are the 'convenience' items like *usu.*, *occ.*, *abbr.*, *cf.*

(c) **The category numbers** with a key to them and what they cover.

The Third Section is **Other English Dialects and Other Languages** which is subdivided into

(a) **Dialects and**
(b) **Other languages.**

The text for which this labelling system has been designed is unconventional in several ways and presents information of different kinds.
It is a dialect dictionary and therefore, particularly as it is of SAE, must make provision for clear and simple elucidation, where possible, of the provenance of borrowed words.

Dealing as it does with a dialect rather than the standard literary form of the language, many of the items in this text are, inevitably, informal, colloquial and occasionally coarse. It is in this field that the lexicographer is on dangerous ground for here the labelling must reflect his opinions, and few people agree upon what constitutes the acceptable or its reverse. The labels cannot, however desirable this may seem on the surface, run the gamut of nuances from Informal, Colloquial, Slang, Vulgar, Coarse, Objectionable, Offensive to 'Taboo' - since at the most superficial level there would be too many status labels for too few words, and at a slightly deeper one, classifications of this sort must shade off one into the other, and any attempt at a cut-off point between them can only be ridiculous.

For items which are beyond the scope - or pale - of the literary standard, clearly some type of definition of their rôle in the dialect must be provided by the labelling system. Clearly eight potential labels must be narrowed down to more practical choices for this purpose, however. Informal vs Colloquial? I favour the label Informal since it potentially covers a wider field of nuances than Colloquial. 'Informal' does not exclude written usage, as 'Colloquial' in its strict sense does, and is for this reason a more flexible and desirable label: but any attempt to abbreviate it shows it up as thoroughly inflexible. Inf, Info, and Inform, are completely misleading, having as they do the implication of information, not informality. For this reason the conventional Coll has been adopted, with reservations, and with the addition in the key of 'Informal in speech or writing.' This question of 'how much' or 'how little' must also affect the key and what is in it, as giving descriptions may obscure the fact that it is a table as such. Obviously 'Coll. Colloquial' is not very helpful, but definition of its application in a table is not usually given, the key to the abbreviations, and explanations of them usually being dealt with separately as in the American Heritage Dictionary and Webster's Third International Dictionary. In the case of Vulgar vs Coarse; both these words have a greater emotional loading than is desirable for a usage label which aims at objectivity, and Coarse being also applicable to appearance and manner is disqualified by its over-broad field of application. Slang, often confused with jargon (for which I have used the label Sectional, in a limited way), is so overworked and abused a term as to make one hesitate to employ it, since in the terminology of many persons it
covers the whole field from Informal to 'Taboo.' For such persons 'there is' as Dr Johnson said 'no settling the point of precedence between a louse and a flea,' and this view can only be disregarded. Slang is, however, not as dated a term as Vulgar, though it perhaps lacks its clear nuance of disapproval. I have therefore adopted Slang after the Webster's practice, again with strong reservations.

The question of the 'really bad' words has been a problem since lexicography began. Dr Johnson, as I have quoted elsewhere, felt 'Barbarous or impure words and expressions may be branded with some note of infamy ...' also 'carefully eradicated ...' and this view can only be disregarded. The lady who congratulated him on omitting them had as her reward his riposte 'So, Madam, you have been looking for them.' Lexicographers who do omit them simplify their task considerably in that a condemnatory label for the totally unacceptable need not be devised. In drafting the text I used for a few items, several of them offensive modes of address, the linguistic signal * signifying 'not attested,' which I have since noted in the key to the American Heritage Dictionary, unfortunately without explanation of its application. For purposes of the final version this asterisk, unassisted, was clearly ineligible. I have accordingly adopted the label Obj. signifying 'Objectionable among certain groups' and, perhaps somewhat rashly, Unaccept. (Unacceptable) if the term, as the Shorter Oxford English Dictionary puts it, is 'not in decent use.' 'Offensive' is used within the definition of any item, particularly modes of address which could give offence, such as coolie, kaffir, John; and 'Abusive,' also within the definition, for modes of address which constitute insult or abuse, such as donder or blikskottel. Objectionable then is the usual label of disapprobation which I have allowed myself, with the use of Unaccept, perhaps half a dozen times or fewer, if full condemnation or branding with some note of infamy has been necessary or desirable. Objectionable, however, is somewhat intractable in the matter of abbreviation, since both Obj. and Object, could well, and usually do have grammatical application: I have adopted Obj. (placed before the signification) and have used object in full where required in the text.

The label 'Substandard' (Substand.) has been cautiously applied and the field of its application restricted. It is used as a comment on grammatical usage or faulty structure. This occurs most commonly in dialect prepositional uses ('by' for 'at') or in direct translations or transliterations of structure from Afrikaans, such as 'you joking' (transliteration of Jy jok) or 'little' in 'a small little tin' (from klein blikkie) where 'little' is redundant (29 Red.) Substandard is not

1. A Plan for a Dictionary of the English Language, 1747.
used for lexical vocabulary items as a criticism of their use or content; this is taken care of by Slang, Obj. or Unexcept. It is therefore unlikely to be found as a label for nouns other than in exceptional cases e.g. 'standpoint' (transliteration of standpunt, meaning 'point of view').

This text, being a lexicographical experiment, is also unorthodox in that it provides certain extra information, as well as the system of categorised classification. Both of these factors complicate the treatment of the labelling of course, but are, I think, nevertheless worthwhile.

Firstly, the syntactic labelling Linguistic Functions divided into the two sections, one covering the Parts of Speech and the second Other Linguistic Signals, has been updated in line with modern linguistic terminology. This is of course somewhat out of line with standard lexicographical practice, which, as is remarked elsewhere (4.1) applies adj. and similar incongruous grammatical designations quite inapposite to the syntactic behaviour of the word designated.

For a dictionary of the Seventies, however, something which differentiates more subtly between adjective and noun modifier, and 'adverb of degree' and intensifier, (which modifies an adjective or adverb and not a verb at all) must be used to maintain these very functional distinctions. Accordingly modifier (usually with p. (noun) unless it is a phrase, and intensifier to cover single word or group modifiers of adjectives and adverbs, are introduced.

In line with the, to me, preferable Afrikaans term Woordsoorte the key is headed Word Classes (Parts of Speech).

The Other Linguistic Signals include grammatically or morphologically essential labels as opposed to the simple function classifications described above, e.g. analg. (analogous/analogy) translit. (transliteration of) agent, agentive suffix) inflect. (inflected form) predic. (predicative form) personif. (personifying) etc.

This set of labels should make finer distinctions and greater linguistic accuracy possible in the description of function and grammatical signification for this text.

Secondly, although the items are of course alphabetically listed for the body of the text, it is a categorised dictionary, in which every category is in itself a 'blanket' usage label. A category number (or numbers) is used for every item, thus fixing it in its place or places in the vocabulary.

The 34 category lists containing all the words in each are given for reference purposes at 4.2. Items in certain categories will automatically carry the usage (status) label of that category, e.g. 10 Expressions, Idioms and Slang, Coll also 17 Historical Administration, Hist. Only one Category, 29, is non-semantic. This is called for convenience 'syntactic' and the number 29 with vb. adj. prep. pron. etc.
appears with all items which are not nouns. The reason for marking non-noun status is that in the dialect dictionaries so far examined there is a heavier preponderance of nouns, particularly the names of flora and fauna; so in the case of SAE it is, I think, of interest and value to indicate the frequency of other word-classes in the vocabulary.

This is done to a lesser extent in Category 27 which has a letter code following the number indicating, in the case of the noun, the semantic category into which it falls, e.g. 27a (+ topographical), 27c (+ flora) 27d (+ fauna) etc., in the case of the adjective which of two classifications (colour or 'other') and in the case of verbs, prepositions etc. an indication of their functions. These are listed with Category 27.

These category numbers cannot of course be clear to the reader without reference to a table, but they should be relatively unobtrusive for the reader who is simply looking up meanings. For one who is interested enough to delve further, it is hoped that there is a 'ready-reference table' to be placed inside the back cover or at some other convenient spot in the book.

Thirdly, an attempt has been made, briefly described elsewhere, (4.1) to give cross-dialect references where possible to uses in other English speech communities (See 4.5). This has been done for two reasons: to add interest to individual items, and to try to begin to integrate SAE into the overall dialect picture of English rather than to isolate it. This process requires a set of dialect labels, most of them fairly straightforward most of which are used with cf. (compare, contrast) e.g. wag-'n-bietjie cf. Austr. wait a while. These labels are: Austr. (Australian), Ang. Ind. (Anglo Indian), Brit. (British), Canad. (Canadian), Hong K. (Hong Kong) N.Z. (New Zealand), Scottish (Scottish English), U.S. (American) Jam. E. (Jamaican English), [A. E.] African English, [L. E.] Indian English, SAE of course, and dial. (dialectal). The inclusion of Jamaican English must of course be accounted for, apart from anything else, because some South African readers might well not take kindly to the notion of comparing their established dialect with the Creole of a black English speech community.

The amount of cross reference material provided by even a cursory examination of Cassidy and Lepage's Dictionary of Jamaican English makes it clear that there is material too good to waste on the grounds that Creole is not dialect. In defence of the inclusion of Jamaican English it can be said that in common with any dialect of English, this is an L1, first language or mother tongue of its speakers.

The bracketed labels are [L. E.] English of Indians in S.A. and [A. E.] English of Africans in S.A. both of which, particularly [A. E.] occur fairly frequently, though few South African Indians or Africans could be regarded as L1 speakers of English.
It is arguable that these belong among the status labels which are in the section of Usage Signals, since the items marked [I.E.] and [A.E.] are cases of usage restricted to particular groups. However, as other speech communities are listed together, it is possibly best to add these two important ones to this table Dialects and other Forms, the 'other forms' covering both the L1 Jamaican English and the Indian and African L2 manifestations.

### ABBREVIATIONS AND LABELLING

#### I. Linguistic Functions

**A Word Classes (Parts of Speech)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adj.</td>
<td>adjective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adv.</td>
<td>adverb/ial (with verb)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; m.</td>
<td>adverb/ial of manner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; p.</td>
<td>adverb/ial of place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; t.</td>
<td>adverb/ial of time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>art.</td>
<td>article (definite or non-definite)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intensifier</td>
<td>'adverb of degree' with adjective or adverb (not verb) e.g. baie (qv)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interj.</td>
<td>exclamation, interjection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modifier</td>
<td>a word or phrase (not an adjective) qualifying a noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n.</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n. abstr.</td>
<td>abstract noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n. modifier</td>
<td>noun used to modify (qualify) another noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n. prop.</td>
<td>proper noun or proper name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prep.</td>
<td>preposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prn.</td>
<td>pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vb</td>
<td>verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vb intrns.</td>
<td>intransitive or non-transitive verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vb trns</td>
<td>transitive verb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* n. prop. is used both for proper nouns which signify one and only one specific entity or person e.g. Dr Johnson, and for proper names of places or persons which are nevertheless used as common 'count' nouns e.g. 'There is a Rietfontein in every province', or 'There are lots of Browns in the telephone directory.'

* vb intrns. is used both for verbs of complete predication, and for non-transitive verbs which cannot take a passive transformation but nevertheless require a complement.

#### B Other Linguistic Signals

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>agent. suff.</td>
<td>agentive suffix, usually -er as in teacher marking the doer or performer of the action designated by a verb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>analg.</td>
<td>analogy, analogous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angl.</td>
<td>anglicisation (of form)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attrib.</td>
<td>attributive/ly; of a noun modifier (see Section 1A) or of an inflected form of the adjective e.g. verkrampte (qv)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cogn.</td>
<td>cognate with, used of words of common or related origin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>demon.</td>
<td>demonstrative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deriv.</td>
<td>derived (with fr.) or derivatively</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dimin.</td>
<td>diminutive (usually with suff.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etym.</td>
<td>etymology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idiom.</td>
<td>idiom/atic/ally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imp.</td>
<td>imperative, of verbs and verb phrases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indef.</td>
<td>indefinite/non-definite, of articles or pronouns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inflect.</td>
<td>inflected (form), inflection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lit.</td>
<td>literal/ly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neg.</td>
<td>negative, of form or structure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td>object (of a verb), see Obj. Section IIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>partic.</td>
<td>participle or participial, of verb or phrase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass.</td>
<td>passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>personif.</td>
<td>personifying, usually of suffixes, see also agent. suff. Section IB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phr.</td>
<td>phrase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>predic.</td>
<td>predicative, of form of adjective e.g. verlig (qv), or of position of other modifier e.g. These animals are off the veld.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prefix</td>
<td>prefix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qn</td>
<td>question</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel.</td>
<td>related to, relative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing.</td>
<td>singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subj.</td>
<td>subject of a verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suff.</td>
<td>suffix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trans.</td>
<td>translation of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>translit.</td>
<td>transliteration of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vb phr.</td>
<td>verb phrase, phrasal verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vbl</td>
<td>verbal as in vbl n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$ \emptyset $</td>
<td>zero, usually of a plural, e.g. bontebok, usu. names of game, wild animals, fish or birds</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Any of these which appear in the head material of an entry may be italicised, e.g. imp. vb phr.

II Usage Signals

A Status Labels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Coll.</td>
<td>Colloquial: informal in speech or writing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist.</td>
<td>Historical: of or pertaining to historical institutions or phenomena, the word being still in use, compare Obs. below</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obj.</td>
<td>Objectionable among certain groups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obs.</td>
<td>Obsolete, no longer in use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reg.</td>
<td>Regional. This label is at all times tentatively used for SAE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sect.</td>
<td>Sectional, jargon of certain occupational, professional, trade or other groups. [see subsection below.]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slang</td>
<td>Slang usage, seldom found written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substand.</td>
<td>Substandard usage, usually grammatical, translated structures or transliterated forms, not often nouns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unaccpt.</td>
<td>Unacceptable: 'not in decent use'. (Shorter Oxford English Dictionary)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Double brackets indicate that the label or item between them is tentative and applied or included with reservations.

### Sectional

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bldg.</th>
<th>Building trade, plumbing etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Farm.</td>
<td>Farming terms, country use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mining</td>
<td>Terms peculiar to gold and diamond mining</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jewish</td>
<td>Terms in use mostly among the Jewish group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Army</td>
<td>Terms in use mainly in the Army</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Other

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>abbr.</th>
<th>abbreviation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>according to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>advt.</td>
<td>advertisement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Afr.</td>
<td>African</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apr.</td>
<td>April</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aug.</td>
<td>August</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Century e.g. C18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cf.</td>
<td>compare/contrast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cit.</td>
<td>cited by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E. of G.H.</td>
<td>Cape of Good Hope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dec.</td>
<td>December</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dub.</td>
<td>doubtful, dubious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>edit.</td>
<td>edition, if preceded by date e.g. 1973 edit. edited by, if followed by name e.g. edit. Gordon-Brown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e.g.</td>
<td>for example (exempli gratia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equiv.</td>
<td>equivalent to/of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erron.</td>
<td>erroneous/ly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp.</td>
<td>especially</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>et cetera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feb.</td>
<td>February</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>figur.</td>
<td>figurative/ly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fr.</td>
<td>from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freq.</td>
<td>frequently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ibid.</td>
<td>ibidem, the same, usu. of a source of quotation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i.e.</td>
<td>id est, that is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jan.</td>
<td>January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mar.</td>
<td>March</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MS.</td>
<td>Manuscript</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nov.</td>
<td>November</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. S. E. W.</td>
<td>North/ern, South/ern, East/ern, West/ern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occ.</td>
<td>occasionally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oct.</td>
<td>October</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>onomat.</td>
<td>onomatopoetic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orig.</td>
<td>originally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss.</td>
<td>possibly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>presum.</td>
<td>presumably</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
prob. probably
pron. pronunciation
pub. published by/in
quot. quotation
(qv) which see (quod vide)
S. A. South Africa
S. Afr. South African
Sept. September
sign. signifying/meaning
sp. spelling
— swung dash used instead of a repetition of the head word.

C Category Numbers
These are more precise usage labels for those who are interested, to show into what section or sections of the vocabulary certain items fall.

A number preceding a definition or part of a definition is that of the category to which the word belongs. Many words fall into more than one category and are numbered accordingly:

e.g. assegai n. 20, 2, 26.

assegai vb trns. usu. pass. 29vb, 20.

Note: A detailed index of these and their component classes precedes the categorised word lists.

1 Address, Modes of
2 African World
3 Birds (non-domestic)
4 Church and State
4a Church
4b State, Politics and Law
5 Clothing and Footwear
6 'Creatures', Non-Domestic Animals, Reptiles etc.
7 Dishes and Cookery
8 Drinking and Smoking
9 Exclamations and Interjections
10 Expressions, Idiom, Colloquialisms
11 Farming and Domestic Animals
12 Fish
13 Flowers
14 Fruit and Vegetables
15 Games, Dances and Diversions
16 Health, Moods, Medicine and Witchcraft
17 Historical Administration
18 House and Garden, Building and Buildings
19 Human types: Persons and Family
19
4.3.1

20 Hunting, Weapons and War
21 Insects
22 Landscape and Topography
23 Languages and Tribes
24 Monetary Units and Measures
25 Oriental South Africa
26 Pioneering and Settlement
27 Place Names
   27a Topographical Nouns, (Town and Country)
   27b Abstract Nouns
   27c Nouns: Flora, Plant Names
   27d Nouns: Fauna, Names of Living Things
   27e Other Nouns and Pronouns
   27f Verbs
   27g Participles of Verbs
   27h Directions, N, S, E, W.
   27i Adjectives, General
   27j Adjectives, Colour
   27k A/P/A. Adjective/Preposition/Adverb
   27l Article
28 Plants
29 Syntactic Categories: All non-nouns are assigned a 'Syntactic' category.
   29adj.
   29adv.
   29art.
   29modifier
   29vb
   29intensifier
   29prep.
   29prn. (for pronoun or pseudo-pronoun)
   29A/P/A Adjective/Preposition/Adverb in the case of 'multi-purpose' words which have all three functions
   29interj.
   29red. Redundant (often for substandard items)
30 Trade, Mining and Law
31 Travel and Vehicles
32 Trees and Shrubs
33 Weather
34 Writing, Education and the Arts

III Other English Dialects and Other Languages

A Dialects and Other Forms
   Ang. Ind. Anglo-Indian English
   Austr. Australian English
   Brit. British English (used of dialect or 'standard')
   Canad. Canadian English
Hong Kong English
New Zealand English
South African English
American English (United States)
Scottish English
Dialectal usu. non-standard form
African English, i.e. typical of the English spoken and written by Africans in S.A.
Indian English, i.e. the forms used by Indians in S.A., mostly Natal.
Jamaican English

B Languages

Afrikaans
Bantu languages including the Nguni group
Arabic
Dutch, Nederlands
English
French
German
Greek
Hebrew
Hottentot
Nama Hottentot
Nama (Zulu, Xhosa, Swazi)
Old English (Anglo Saxon)
Portuguese
Spanish
(Sesuto)
Xhosa
Zulu

Oxford English Dictionary, if Shorter O.E.D., Pocket O.E.D. or O.E.D. Supplement, this is specified.
### Alphabetical List of Abbreviations and other Labels.
(Fuller explanations appear under Sections IA, IB, IIA, IIB, IIIA, IIIIB in the foregoing tables.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>abbr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>according to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adv.</td>
<td>adjective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adv. m.</td>
<td>adverb of manner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adv. p.</td>
<td>adverb of place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adv. t.</td>
<td>adverb of time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Afk.</td>
<td>Afrikaans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Afr.</td>
<td>African</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agent.</td>
<td>agentive see IB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Analg.</td>
<td>analogy/analogous see IB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ang. Ind.</td>
<td>Anglo Indian see IIIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angl.</td>
<td>anglicisation see IB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Army</td>
<td>See IIA Sectional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>art.</td>
<td>article see IA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attrib.</td>
<td>attributive/ly see IB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aug.</td>
<td>August</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Austr.</td>
<td>Australian see IIIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bantu</td>
<td>see IIIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bldg.</td>
<td>Building see IIA Sectional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brit.</td>
<td>British see IIIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Century see IIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canad.</td>
<td>Canadian see IIIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cf.</td>
<td>compare/contrast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cit.</td>
<td>cited by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. of G.H.</td>
<td>Cape of Good Hope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cogn.</td>
<td>cognate see IB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coll.</td>
<td>colloquial see IIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Dec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>demon.</td>
<td>demonstrative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deriv.</td>
<td>derived/derivatively see IB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dial.</td>
<td>dialect/al see IIIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dimin.</td>
<td>diminutive see IB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Du.</td>
<td>Dutch, Nederlands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dub.</td>
<td>doubtful/dubious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>E.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>edit.</td>
<td>edition/edited by see IIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e.g.</td>
<td>exempli gratia see IIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng.</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equiv.</td>
<td>equivalent of/to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erron.</td>
<td>erroneous/ly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp.</td>
<td>especially</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>et cetera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etym.</td>
<td>etymology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farm.</td>
<td>Farming see IIA Sectional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feb.</td>
<td>February</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>figur.</td>
<td>figurative/ly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fr.</td>
<td>from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fr.</td>
<td>French</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freq.</td>
<td>frequently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ger.</td>
<td>German</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gk.</td>
<td>Greek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hong K.</td>
<td>Hong Kong see IIIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebr.</td>
<td>Hebrew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist.</td>
<td>Historical see IIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hott.</td>
<td>Hottentot see also Nama III.B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ibid.</td>
<td>ibidem, the same see IIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idiom.</td>
<td>idiom/atric/ally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i.e.</td>
<td>id est, that is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[I.E.]</td>
<td>Indian English see IIIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imp.</td>
<td>imperative see IB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indef.</td>
<td>indefinite see IB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inflect.</td>
<td>inflection see IB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intensifier</td>
<td>see IA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interj.</td>
<td>interjection, exclamation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intrns.</td>
<td>intransitive see note following IA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jam. E.</td>
<td>Jamaican English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jewish</td>
<td>see IIA Sectional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japanese</td>
<td>(language)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lat.</td>
<td>Latin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>llt.</td>
<td>literal/ly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malay</td>
<td>(language)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mar.</td>
<td>March</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mining</td>
<td>see IIA Sectional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modifier</td>
<td>noun or other modifying phrase see IA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. abstr.</td>
<td>abstract noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nama</td>
<td>Hottentot see III B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neg.</td>
<td>negative see IB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ngu.</td>
<td>Nguni see IIIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n. modifier</td>
<td>see IA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nov.</td>
<td>November</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n. prop.</td>
<td>proper noun or proper name; see note following IA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N.Z.</td>
<td>New Zealand see IIIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>objectionable See IIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td>object (of a verb)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obs.</td>
<td>obsolete see IIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occ.</td>
<td>occasionally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oct.</td>
<td>October</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O.E.</td>
<td>Old English (Anglo Saxon)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O.E.D.</td>
<td>Oxford English Dictionary see note following IIIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>onomat.</td>
<td>onomatopoeic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orig.</td>
<td>origin/ally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>personif.</td>
<td>personifying See IB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phr.</td>
<td>phrase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Port.</td>
<td>Portuguese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss.</td>
<td>possibly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>predic.</td>
<td>predicative/ly See IB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prefix</td>
<td>prefix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prep.</td>
<td>preposition/ally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>presum.</td>
<td>presumably</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prn.</td>
<td>pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prob.</td>
<td>probably</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pron.</td>
<td>pronunciation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pub.</td>
<td>published by/in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q</td>
<td>question</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quot.</td>
<td>quotation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(qv)</td>
<td>quod vide, which see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>regional See IIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel.</td>
<td>related to/relative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>South/ern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. A.</td>
<td>South Africa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAE</td>
<td>South African English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. Afr.</td>
<td>South African</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scottish</td>
<td>see IIIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sect.</td>
<td>Sectional see IIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sept.</td>
<td>September</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sign.</td>
<td>signifying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing.</td>
<td>singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slang</td>
<td>see IIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sp.</td>
<td>spelling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Span.</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sotho</td>
<td>see IIIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subj.</td>
<td>subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substand.</td>
<td>Substandard see IIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suff.</td>
<td>suffix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T trans.</td>
<td>translation of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>translit.</td>
<td>transliteration of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trns.</td>
<td>transitive see IA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U Unaccpt.</td>
<td>unacceptable see IIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.S.</td>
<td>United States see IIIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V vb</td>
<td>verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vb intrns.</td>
<td>intransitive verb see note following IA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vbl</td>
<td>verbal see IB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vb trns.</td>
<td>transitive verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W W.</td>
<td>West/ern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X Xh.</td>
<td>Xhosa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y Yiddish</td>
<td>(language)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z Zu.</td>
<td>Zulu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>φ</td>
<td>zero see IB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~</td>
<td>see IIIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ ]</td>
<td>see IIA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.4 The Treatment of Place Name Formatives for a Dialect Dictionary

The reasons for including the place name formatives as entries in the experimental dictionary have been discussed under problems of inclusion in 4.1, and in Chapter I, 1.8 and 1.9. This section deals with their structures as recurrent patterns, and with what classes of formatives they are.

Two rather widely differing historical comments on the structure of our place names may well serve as introduction to the present material: '... in dry countries, any circumstance relating to water is of sufficient importance to distinguish that place. Thus it is that the Dutch word Fontein is made such liberal use of in all parts of the Colony: the Hottentot word Kamma (water) is not less frequently found in the composition of the aboriginal names.'¹

This comment of Burchell's shows a liberal minded and understanding tolerance of the recurrence of certain items, whereas Thompson shows both contempt and distaste:

'The farm where we now stopped is named Modder-Fonteyn (Muddy Fountain) an appellation so common in the Colony that I have visited, I believe, above a dozen places of that name. It is strange to observe the barrenness of fancy of the boors in giving names to places. In every quarter of the colony we find Brak River, Zwart River, Palmiet River, Baviaan's Kloof and so forth. The appellation being given generally from some quality common to many places, and seldom with that nice and accurate discrimination which seizes the distinctive and peculiar features alone, andembodies them in the name. This may, perhaps, be ascribed to the sameness and monotony of South African scenery; it however occasions much inconvenience and confusion to the traveller'² - an intolerant and somewhat exaggerated view of the same phenomenon.

Many years later, Kipling, it is clearly evident, was fascinated by the South African method of 'building' place names, and tried it himself in his Boer War poems in The Five Nations (1903).


2. George Thompson, Travels and Adventures in Southern Africa, 1827 Vol. I, p. 81-2. (I have since found that the Revd Charles Pettman in South African Place Names, (1931) chose this identical passage as an introductory comment upon this subject.)
'Ubique means Entrain at once for Grootdefeatfontein'
'Ubique means offload 'your guns at midnight in the rain'

-and with even greater wryness:

'Our blood 'as truly mixed with yours
All down the Red Cross train,
We've bit the same thermometer
In Bloomingtyphoidfontein.'

It is also worth noting that he applied the South African method nearer home by which London became 'Ackneystadt and Thamesfontein to his hero, the Cockney Tommy.

Before attempting to make an analysis of the structural patterns, there are, I think, several general points worth mentioning. Like other countries which have started as colonies of a mother country, or countries, or which have transplanted communities among their population groups, South Africa has many 'borrowed' place names: from Holland, Amsterdam (later renamed New Scotland), Utrecht, Dordrecht, Alkmaar, Leerdam and others: from Great Britain, Richmond, Margate, Westminster, Newcastle, Dundee, Bedford, East London, and brought by the German Legion in 1856 - 7, and the German settlers of 1858, Braunschweig, Hanover, Hamburg, Berlin, Frankfort, Wiesbaden and Potsdam.

This borrowing of names from the mother country, either from nostalgia or from superficial similarity of the places concerned is, of course, only to be expected of expatriate communities. Examples from the names of British settlements confirm this: Perth, Southport, Newcastle and Ipswich in Australia: Southampton, Cumberland, Lancaster Sound, Fort William in Canada, and legion names in the United States of America: Richmond, Birmingham, Salisbury, Greenwich, Cambridge, Worcester, Reading, New Jersey, New York, New Hampshire and even New England, to name but a few.

There are, too, certain parallels in the South African place names of the suffixes - ton (-town), -dale, -ville, -chester, -caster in - dorp, -dal, -stad, and -burg, which recur in South African names just as their equivalents in English ones.

An examination of South African place names, however superficial, reveals several varying, recurrent structures of which at least one item, with one noteworthy exception, is a noun. It is in the features of these basic nouns that much of the interest lies. Nouns, common or proper, however, are by no means the only components of the place names: there are adjectives, adverbs, prepositions, articles, verbs and their participles variously combining to form what must surely be a uniquely constructed set of names, however repetitive some of their semantic content may be.

1. It is particularly interesting here to note offload (trans. Afrikaans aflaai) the SAE for British unload.

2. Peace is declared, and I return to 'Ackneystadt, but not the same;

But now discharged, I fall away
To do with little things again ... Gawd, 'oo knows all I cannot say,
Look after me in Thamesfontein!

'The Return', The Five Nations 1903
For the purposes of this work these items have been treated as a collection of variably combining name-building 'blocks', categorised both according to their grammatical function and to their semantic content showing that they are of grammatically differing shapes as well as semantically differing colours.¹

The ways in which these blocks combine are in themselves of considerable interest, and are described below. They are basically about twelve in number, plus variations, and these are included briefly, in the introductory material to Category 27 Place Names in 4.2 which is part of the text of the experimental dictionary.²

To deal with place names in a dictionary it is clearly necessary to break them down into their various recurrent elements or 'formatives' to make it possible for a reader to check on the meaning of an element encountered in a place name. This will mean that the body of the dictionary is not cluttered with proper nouns and a mass of encyclopaedic geographical material after the fashion of the American Heritage Dictionary which includes very numerous proper names both of places and persons, or of the Webster dictionaries which, somewhat speciously, list them as adjectives. Such an entry as 'Kobe A city of Japan, a seaport on Osaka Bay in Southern Honshu, Population 1,181,000. (American Heritage Dictionary) is not, I think, in its proper place in a dictionary, dialect or otherwise. Even less, I submit, is 'pretoria adj. usu cap [fr Pretoria Union of S.Africa] of or from Pretoria the administrative capital of the Union of So. Africa; of the kind or style prevalent in Pretoria.' (Webster's Third International Dictionary, in which Chicago and other U.S. cities are identically handled.)

In the present work the list of formatives for inclusion must clearly be selective, since an exhaustive collection such as Pettman's (South African Place Names, 1931), C. Graham Botha's (Place Names of the Cape Province, 1926) or P. J. Nienaber's (Suid Afrikaanse Pleknaamwoordeboek Deel 1, 1963) or the recent Khoekhoense Pleknaamwoordeboek of F. E. Raper and G. S. Nienaber (H. S. R. C.)³ would be likely to swamp the other dialect material entirely, since these formatives are very numerous indeed.

They are, however, varyingly combined and continue to be so, and it is, I think, a both useful and necessary part of the lexicographer's job to enable his reader to interpret say Onderstepoort, Klipdrift, Kulpier, Sterkspruit, Welgevonde and similarly constructed names if he wishes to do so, from separate, readily available productive formatives. This productivity has already been illustrated in two ways: firstly, in their

1. In each entry for a place name formative a grammatical signification is given, e.g. 'berg', n. prefix and suff. 't; and an indication in the definition of the type of structure in which it occurs e.g. blink- or groen- given as adj. in the head material is described as usu prefixed to a noun and followed by examples of place names in which the particular formative occurs.

2. The placing of the categorised survey of the vocabulary as 4.2 of Part 1 results in an apparent duplication of material.

3. I have unfortunately not had access to this text.
practical use in the creation or construction of new names on the old pattern, and secondly in the literary use to which they can be put, here exemplified by Kipling, surprising only in that he was an Englishman. Many South African writers, of course, use precisely the same device for the construction of fictional names, a clearly more satisfactory method than the anagrammatization 'Teniquota', faintly Amerindian in tone, used by Pauline Smith in The Beadle and The Little Karoo.

It is arguable that these elements belong in a segregated section similar to the pronouncing gazetteer in Webster's Seventh New Collegiate Dictionary. This, if it were possible to make the segregation complete, might be desirable. Many formative elements however, as have already been noted, are common topographical items which are necessary entries in the body of the dictionary. Others are names of plants, birds or other living things to which the same applies: - palmiet, keurboom, waboom, springbok, eland, loerie, kabeljou, malgas and similar items.

Their onomastic function, however, must in each case be treated as a subordinate, but indispensable tag to the entry proper, and would not be fittingly removed to a separate section unless it were there duplicated, which would have obvious practical and aesthetic disadvantages. There are, on the other hand, topographical items such as -kuil, -bron, -gat; adjectives like nou-, blink-, klaar-, helder-, skoon-, groen--; verb participles -gedacht, -gelegen, -gegund, -gevonde(n), -verdient, whose only possible raison d'être in such a work is their function as place name formatives.

The place names themselves appear to have a regularly recurring set of structures, which are here, for convenience, numbered.

1. One of the simplest and most frequent structures is a combination of two nouns, a proper name or noun, plus a common noun, e.g. Johannesburg, Venterstad, Villiersdorp, Du Toit's Kloof, Wesselsnek, Hammanskraal, Odendaals-, Potgieters-, Nelsrus(t), Groblers-, Niekerks-, Adriaans-, Viljoenshoop, Viljoenskroon etc.

It is noticeable however, even from so few examples as those above, that the common nouns combining with the proper names, do not carry the same features. They appear to be of two basic types:

(a) Those carrying the predictable topographical feature found in kloof, dorp, stad, kraal, nek, drift, and
(b) those carrying the less probable abstract feature, hoop, rus(t), kroon, less numerous, as might be expected, but reflecting nevertheless the hopes, fears, triumphs or despairs of pioneering life.

2. Certain place names, often of farms, towns or districts consist simply of abstract nouns, also reflections of the lot of those in an unknown land and uncertain climate: Eensaamheid, Eendrag, Vryheid,
Vereeniging, Verlatenheid, Vrede, Rust-en-Vrede, Rust-en-Vreugd, Blydskap, Patensie, Benoudheid, Toekomst, Moedverloor, Geluk, Onrus, Oorwinning: (most of these are unfortunately beyond the scope of the present text.)

Note: Abstract nouns do occasionally combine with other, usually topographical common nouns. See 4d.

3. Certain proper names of persons are used as place names: Elliot, Colenso, Wepener, Herschel, De Wet, Bathurst, Durban, Petrus Steyn, Reitz, Harrismith, Ladysmith, all of which naturally must have some particular historical significance in their districts. Such names, obviously, can have no justifiable place as 'formatives' in a dictionary reflecting as they do purely encyclopaedic historical material. Also the 'who' and 'why' of names of this type are extensively dealt with in anecdotal and historical works such as those of C. Graham Botha, Charles Pettman and P. J. Nienaber.

4. The structure in which two common nouns combine is probably one of the most frequent. This N+N structure may take varying forms:
(a) Two nouns with a topographical feature, e.g. Kuilsrivier, Kloofnek, Kranskop, Valldrift, Fonteiskloof, Kransfontein, Strands Kloof, Strandfontein.
(b) The name of some growing thing - plant, tree or flower, +flora with a topographical noun. e.g. Palmietfontein, Waboomskraal, Melkbosstrand, Rietpoel, Leliesfontein, Keurboomsrivier, Melkhoutkraal, Boegoeberg, Granaatboskolk.
(c) The name of a living thing, mammal, bird, fish, reptile or insect, +fauna with a topographical noun. Many of these, presumably recall specific events which remain now in such forms as Olifantsfontein, Leeu kraal, Wolwehoek, Tierveli, Tygerberg, Slangrivier, Haartebeestekuil, Rhenosterkop, Stompneusbaai, Blesbokrivier, Elandskloof, Kiewietskuil, Ystervarkfontein, Papiesvlei.
(d) A noun with the feature abstract with a topographical noun: e.g. Vredefort, Hooipstad, Genadendal, Groot Sorgfontein, Spytfontein, Benoudheidsfontein, Twyfelspoort.

5. The structure Adjective + Noun occurs in numerous variations. While the adjectives are of several types the nouns are most frequently, though not invariably, topographical.
(a) Colour adjective with a noun normally topographical. e.g. Groenkloof, Groenvlei, Witsand, Witfontein, Witbank, Blouberg,
Bloukrans, Roodeberg, Roodepoort, Roodekrantz, Rooiber, Swartberg, Swartland, Swartrivier, Vaalkop, Vaalhoek, Vaalplaas.

(b) 'Other quality' Adjective with a noun, normally but not always topographical:
e.g. Noupoort, Breederivier, Brak Rivier, Kromdraai, Verkeerdevlei, Hollaagte, Heldergoed, Groottfontein, Skoongesig, Mooi Uitsig, Klarwater, Bonteheuwel, Jammerdrif, Kaallaagte, or occasionally abstract e.g. Goedgoeloof, Godemoed, Langverdriet.

Note 1: Occasionally a single, poignant adjective can constitute a place name, e.g. Hoopvol, Dankbaar, Moedig, Behulpsaam, Rustig.

Note 2: Some adjectives of the Adjective + N structures occur in both their inflected (attributive), and uninfl ced forms, e.g. Droëvlakte, Droogas, Stillewater, Stilbaai, Kleinmonde, Kleinmond, Platberg, Platteklip, Langebaan, Langkloof. This may well be a reflection of what Professor J. Smuts regards as the evolutionary process of the attributive inflection of adjectives in Afrikaans. ¹

Note 3: Such adjectives (see 6 below) as bo, onder, voor, and agter, which can function grammatically as prepositions or adverbs as well as adjectives, occur varying in place names (though not usually as adverbs) e.g. Voorbaai, Boplaas, Agterplaas, or in the inflected superlative form - Onderstepoort, Onderstedorings. See also 6.

Note 4: The reverse structure N + adjective seems rare. The N (topo) + adjective of Koppiealleen, and N. (flora) + adjective of Boompiealleen are the only occurences of this type so far noted.

6. Combinations taking either the form Preposition + Noun, or Noun + Preposition.

These are, I think, fairly uncommon and the 'Prepositions' in the grammatical category are marked as A.P.A. (Adjective, Preposition, Adverb) to indicate their variable grammatical behaviour. Examples of these structures are: Waterval-onder, Waterval-boven, Bo-Kouga, Onder-Kouga, Doordrift, Underberg, Agter-Sneeuberg, Onder-Smoordrift, Onder-Papegaaiberg.

Note: It would seem that when bo, onder and agter function as prepositions they are separated, usually by hyphens, from their nouns, and either precede or follow them.² In other combinations they appear to be adjectives. See 5, note 3. Other prepositions so far noted precede the noun in the ordinary prepositional phrase order.


2. With a possible exception in Boverwachting.
7. Combination of a Numerical (either Cardinal or Ordinal) + Noun, (usually topographical): these occur in both Afrikaans and English Names, e.g. Driefontein, Tweespruit, Driewerwe, Two Streams, Seven Fountains, Vier-en-twintig-riviere, Derdehoek, Eersterivier. Note: The enkel of Enkeldoorn can perhaps be regarded as a 'near numeral.'

8. A Noun or Proper Name in combination with a Direction which either precedes, or more commonly in South Africa, follows it, both in Afrikaans and English: e.g. Riebeek-Oos, Barkly East, Somerset East, Somerset West, Noordhoek, Noordeinde, Wesdriefontein, Suider-Paarl.

9. The name of a Tribe or Nation in combination with, normally prefixed to, a Noun which is usually topographical. This is a minor category but such structures occur frequently enough to merit mention: e.g. Hottentot's Holland, Boesmanshoek, Franschhoek, Fransmanshoek, Gouritzrivier, Outeniquastrand, Kaffer Drift.

10. Article plus Noun as a place name structure occurs usually with the Dutch form of the definite article, e.g. De Aar, De Doorns, De Gracht, De Hoek, De Hoop, De Rust, De Wildt, Het Kruis, but also with the Afrikaans form often with a single topographical noun, e.g. Die Bos, Die Oog, Die Put; also Die Vlug, Die Hel. One might here compare 'the Berg' (Drakensberg) and 'the Bay' (die Baai), Port Elizabeth. Although these show a general tendency to be combinations with topographical nouns, it is evident that the abstract nouns, e.g. Die Hoop, De Rust, are represented, also the flora in De Doorns. Note 1: This structure occurs also in French names in South Africa: La Cotte, La Motte, La Plaisante, La Mercy, Le Chasseur, La Fontaine. Note 2: This apparent structure may also be seen in some Proper Name + Noun forms, e.g. De Mistkraal, De Klerk, De Wet which cannot of course be regarded as true examples of structure 10, but of structure 1, or 3 (qv).

11. Structures containing Verbs: These are not common and may contain nouns or pronouns, e.g. Vegkop, Soekmekaar, Hou Hoek, Helpmekaar, Keerom, Verduwakloof, or be single imperative verbs such as Uitkyk, Dwaal or negative imperatives such as Twist-Niet or Terg-Niet. Note: With the exception of Soebatsfontein and Verduwakloof - in which verduaal may be an adjective - the verb structures so far noted appear to be, or to contain, imperatives.

12. Adverb plus Participle: This structure is not as rare as might be expected, being the only one which does not normally contain a noun. However, the actual adverbs which precede the participles seem to be

1. Uitkyk may also be a noun, cf Uitsig, so may Dwaal.
relatively few: wel-, ver-, wyd-, goed-, lang-, gou-, nooit-

Note 1: It is possible for the participle to combine with a pronoun or other particle, e.g. Allesverloren, Nietverdient, in the case of the participle of a transitive verb.

Note 2: The participle without the adverb may be prefixed by the negative morpheme on- e.g. Ongelegen, Onverwacht.

These twelve structures with their variants and exceptions, although fairly numerous, may not be exhaustive, and others may well emerge from further research as may a more satisfactory method of classification. For example the 'Singleton' might perhaps be regarded as a separate structure for each separate word class. Thus:

'Singletons'
(a) N. Prop e.g. Petrus Steyn
(b) N. + abstr. e.g. Eensaamheid
(c) N. + fauna e.g. Pofadder
(d) N. + flora e.g. Kiepersol
(e) Adjective e.g. Hoopvol
(f) Verb e.g. Dwars
(g) N. + topos e.g. Kloof

Similarly the structures containing verbs or their participles might well be differently treated.

The classification of place name structures here described, therefore, is only tentative, but it does, I think, serve as an illustration of both the semantic and grammatical variety of the formatives which I consider to be within the province of the dialect lexicographer. It should also show, I hope, that it must be part of his job to provide the necessary non-historical information to interpret a fair number of them and to provide a categorised and separate list of those included for the benefit of any reader or traveller who requires to see the collection as a whole.

Note: Regrettably the indigenous African and Khoisan language formatives must be regarded as beyond the scope of this work, being more properly the field of African and Khoisan language experts than that of the dialect lexicographer. The Khoisan language place names have been dealt with in detail by G.S. Nienaber and P.E. Raper in a recent HSRC publication, to which I have unfortunately not had access, Khoekhoense Plekname; and earlier in Chapters I and II of the Revd Chas Pettman's South African Place Names (1931)

1. There are just under three hundred of these formatives listed in 4.2, Category 27.

2. Chapter III of the Revd Chas Pettman's South African Place Names (1931) is devoted to Bantu Place Names.
The categorised list represents, as do the structures, one way of treating the material. Pettman's exhaustive appendix of nouns and adjectives is a case in point. Pettman divides the nouns to which I have assigned the feature +topographical into Heights, Flats, Waters, Depressions, Erections and Enclosures and General, six elegant divisions where I have used only one. Abstract nouns are not reflected in his appendix but several, as he puts it 'uncomely' names, such as Moordkull, and 'more euphonious' ones like Weenen, Benauwdheidsfontein and Langverdriet are dealt with in the chapter on Dutch Place Names. The nouns in his two chapters on names derived from the flora and those from the fauna, are very numerous but are not listed in this Appendix of Substantival Elements which contains only those six groups of +topographical nouns mentioned above. Those names from French, English, German, Portuguese, Bantu, Bushman, Hottentot, Greek and Hebrew, and the derivations of Proper Name Place names, which are of course beyond the scope of this work, are all meticulously handled by him.

The 'Adjectival Elements', as he calls them in his Appendix, Pettman divides into Dimensions, Colour, Shape, Quality, Position and Numerals. As many of these 'Adjectival Elements' are nouns, noun-modifiers or prepositions, this is probably, for 1975 as opposed to 1931, a less sound categorisation than that of the nouns.

The scheme laid out here is of course not devised for a full scale piece of onomastic research such as Pettman's, and is offered only as a means of incorporating valuable and significant material into a dialect dictionary. The other weakness is that 'special occasion' place names have no place in it. Names like Bobbejaanstert, Putsonderwater, Konstabel Jongensklip, Voëlgeraas, Bondgeblaf, Ezeljag, Tweebuffels-met-een-koeël-doodgeskiet-fontein, Derv, Bandelierskop, Rokoptel and Skilpadtepel (surely non est), cannot be featured here, and those carrying the aura of 'old, unhappy far-off things and battles long ago' - like Post Retief and Fort Mistake - are lost to the lexicographer.

**Note 1:** Where a formative is so far noted as being only prefixed to other items it is followed by a hyphen, or as suffixed, preceded by one. If it occurs both as a prefix and a suffix one hyphen precedes it and another follows it; e.g. *krans*.

**Note 2:** The numeral of the place name Category 27, with the letter *signifying which type of formative it is, precedes definition of the item e.g. *bron* [(brɔn)] n. 27a

* These are listed with the abbreviations in Section IIC p. 199.
References:

These appear in greater detail in the bibliography.

Burchell's Travels, Vol. I 1822
Thompson's Travels, Vols I and II 1827
Rudyard Kipling, The Five Nations 1903
C. Graham Botha, Place Names in the Cape Province, 1926

Charles Pettman, South African Place Names, 1931
P. J. Niemab, Suid Afrikaanse Pleknaamwoordeboek, Deel 1, 1963
B. P. and Shell Road Maps: (no dates) Place Name Lists.
Bosman, van der Merwe and Hiemstra, Tweetalige Woordeboek.

Other References:
Webster's Third International Dictionary
Webster's Seventh New Collegiate Dictionary
American Heritage Dictionary, Full and paperbacked Editions
Charles Pettman, Africanderisms, 1913
Pauline Smith, The Beadle, The Little Karoo
Telephone Directories.
Post Office Code List.
One of the problems of dialect lexicography, indeed of dialect study as a whole, is what might be described as its isolative quality. Dialect dictionaries and other linguistic studies of dialect tend to be strongly compartmentalised. This is, admittedly, to a great extent the raison d'être of any one of them, and this work, compared with dictionaries of Americanisms, Canadianisms, Australian English, Anglo Indian and even Jamaican English, is a latecomer in the field in which the tendency is to isolate rather than to integrate.  

South African speakers of English as L1, roughly 1.6 million, including the Coloureds, form a relatively small speech-community compared with the major English-speaking populations of North America, Australia and even New Zealand, and the English of South Africa has been comparatively little worked over. This is particularly noticeable in comparison with major works on the English of Anglo India and of course Jamaica.

In this text, (a point mentioned in the formal introduction to

1. Data is at present being collected for a Dictionary of Newfoundland English by workers at the Memorial University of Newfoundland, St John's Newfoundland Canada. This is described by G. M. Story, W. Kirwin and J. D. A. Widdowson in Lexicography in English, pp. 104-108 (see McDavid and Duckert).

2. Population 2, 640, 000.

3. Hobson-Jobson by Yule and Burnell, and Indian Words in English by G. Subba Rao.

the dictionary), my object has been, wherever possible, or apposite, to make cross references to terms in use in other English speech communities for contrast or comparison, to indicate in a small way where the South African touches upon or fits into the overall picture of English dialects. Obviously a large scale cross-dialectal study to integrate major tendencies and concepts in the dialects of English is not really within the province of the lexicographer, and equally obviously beyond the scope of a work of this size. Also, like the categorisation of the vocabulary, this may well be regarded as lexicology rather than lexicography.

On this small scale, though, the insertion in certain entries in the text of an item or usage form from another dialect can, and I think does, add quite considerably to the interest of both the individual entries and of the text as a whole, giving as it does a glimpse of a de-isolative intention in this particular treatment of the vocabulary of English in South Africa.

A close study of the roughly 1700 items of the Australian and New Zealand Supplement ¹ to the Pocket Oxford Dictionary of 1969 revealed enough interesting parallels to inspire a search for similar British and American items. Fairly close reading of the Dictionary of Jamaican English by Cassidy and Le Page, and the Dictionary of Canadianisms edited by Walter S. Avis, has greatly increased this corpus of comparative material. Sampling of the Dictionary of Americanisms of Mitford Mathews has been less profitable, possibly because of the vastness of the volume and because of the particularly large amount of specialist naturalist vocabulary in it. Hobson-Jobson, the glossary of Anglo-Indian usage, although useful, is slightly exotic for detailed comparative study, and the Anglo-Indian terms included in the experimental dictionary (nabob, nullah, sahib, memsahib, etc.) are commonly known like wallah and dhobi rather than drawn from this text ². As far as I am aware no studies exist of the forms of English of St. Helena ³, or of Hong Kong, both of which, in the light of having had St. Helena servants in my parental home, and of a recent week or so in Hong Kong on a visit to the Far East, seem exceptionally interesting. Reading the daily paper of Victoria, the South China Morning Post, and listening to English speakers there, one is aware of well-assimilated Chinese borrowings in common use

2. Since writing this G. Subba Rao’s Indian Words in English (Oxford 1969) has come to hand: see appended list on p. 225.
3. Or, presumably that of Tristan da Cunha.
(pak-pai, walla-walla, amah, tai-pan, sam-fu, ricksha) comparable with press usage of borrowed forms in South Africa.

The final section of the bibliography gives texts used in this part of the work - included are writings of Han Suyin, James Clavell and John Gordon Davis, for Hong Kong - of E. M. Forster and John Masters for Anglo-India - Henry Lawson and C. J. Dennis for Australia, and the Anne (of Green Gables) books for girls for some of the usage of Canada. The dictionaries of other forms of English appear in Section I of the Bibliography and linguistic studies such as Albert C. Marckwardt's American English, Sidney J. Baker's The Australian Language and John O'Grady's most entertaining Aussie English appear in Section II Other Reference Works.

Obvious omissions here are West Africa and East Africa. Although there is a large and increasing body of West African writing in English such as the novels of writers such as Chinua Achebe and plays of Wole Soyinka, I have not attempted to tap this, with the exception of the irresistible term 'been to' comparable with the derisive Afrikaans usage of O, W, O. (one was oorsee) quoted at the entry for overseas. There are two reasons for leaving this field almost unexplored: one is the obvious time factor, the other, the only partially valid fact that English is not the mother tongue of Achebe, Soyinka and their fellow writers. I say partially valid because much of the South African writing examined has been written by persons whose mother tongue is or was not English: Uys Krige, H. C. Bosman, Todd Matshikiza, R. R. R. Dhlomo, Ezekiel Mpahlele and Peter Abrahams have written in English as their language of choice, just as have the West African writers, and some indeed as in the case of Uys Krige and R. R. R. Dhlomo, have written in their mother tongue as well. The English of English-speaking Colonials in East Africa has also been neglected, in spite of the fact that it contains, or contained numerous well-assimilated Swahili borrowings in daily currency, regularly observable in the speech of 'expatriate' East African English residents: examples of these are the common greeting jambo, the farewell kwa-heri similar to hamba kahle, shenzi a skeim or other low grade object, also used adjectivally, pumbavu equivalent of monpara or domkop, maridadi meaning smart, excellent or very 'poshed up' (comparable with bakarat) and the expression of resignation sharia mungu, God's business. Again the time factor has prevented detailed examination of works by such writers as Robert Ruark, Joy Adamson or Jane van Lawick Goodall. Apart from this, in spite of the beauty of the Swahili language which I did once try to learn on a long East Coast sea voyage, Colonial East Africa has, at any rate in my mind, the sad air of a 'has-been' never to be seen again, like the

1. Also G. Subba Rao's Indian Words in English (Oxford) 1969.
British Raj in India. The Indian languages, however, have far more deeply infiltrated the English language and from as early as the seventeenth century. Few English speakers know that they owe, among many others, the following words to their influence: 

- shampoo, pyjamas, dungarees, cummerbund, mutti, celico, chints, seersucker, khaki, thug, lilac, robbery-pack, chit, tattoo, dinghy, catamaran, toddy, cushy, veranda, blighty, jungle, loot, cot, bangle, coir, teak, jute.

Although this part of the work is clearly beyond the bounds of what might be called the 'writ' of the lexicographer, especially the dialect lexicographer applied to the usage of a single speech community, it has had a certain excitement to it which has frequently provided leaven in what is inevitably, at times, a stodgy task. Some examples to illustrate the types of cross references given follow here. For simplicity the South African term is placed first in each case, and items not included in the text of Part II are bracketed. [Where the same word is used in other forms of English, e.g. Scottish kist, neak Australian lay-by, fossick, this has as far as possible been indicated in the dictionary].

**People:**
- abakwetha / umkwetha
- aia
- banana boy
- bergie
- butj / boetie
- doedie
- dominee
- domkop / mompara
- Flying Angels (Harry's)
- landdrost
- maat
- mlungu
- Osta- , Aia-
- poor white
- randlord

**Australian** kipper

**Hong Kong** amah [Anglo-Indian ayah]

**Australian** bananlander [Queenslander]

**Australian** bushy Ie

**Australian** binghi, Jamaican baada

**Australian** brush, sheila, United States broad etc.

**Canadian** dominee (schoolmaster, usually Scottish or a Presbyterian minister)

**Australian** drongo, galah, dilly

**East African** (m)pumbavu (pombasa)

**Australian** flying doctor

**Canadian** district warden

**Australian** mate, cobber

**United States** whitey, Hong Kong gwal-lo, Jamaican backra

**Hong Kong** Ah- (prefix)

**United States** red neck, white trash

**Jamaican** white-jeg

**Hong Kong** tai-pan, Anglo-Indian nabob
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rondganger</td>
<td>[Australian swagman, United States bum]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skelm</td>
<td>[East African shenzi n.]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sugar baron</td>
<td>Canadian lumber king, sawdust nobility, British merchant prince</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>togt labourer</td>
<td>Canadian tripman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verkrampte</td>
<td>Australian wowser, Canadian mossback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Living things:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agteros / afterox</td>
<td>Australian poler, Jamaican tongue cattle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blaasop</td>
<td>Jamaican balloon fish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brak</td>
<td>Australian mong, Anglo-Indian pye-dog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fat lamb</td>
<td>Australian fat(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grunter</td>
<td>Jamaican grunt (numerous compounds)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hansie (calf)</td>
<td>Australian poddy calf, United States and Canadian dogie (motherless calf in a range herd)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hanslam</td>
<td>Australian poddy lamb, sook, Jamaican cossie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jacopever</td>
<td>Australian Sergeant Baker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leervia</td>
<td>Australian leather jacket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mooinoointjie</td>
<td>Jamaican Nancy/None-so-Pretty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slyt sheep</td>
<td>Australian gummy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Growing things:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blushing bride</td>
<td>Jamaican shame-(a)-lady</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaffir- / kaffer- (prefix)</td>
<td>United States nigger-, Canadian Indian-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kremetartboom</td>
<td>Australian cream of tartar tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steekgras</td>
<td>Canadian speargrass, Australian porcupine grass (spinifex)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stinkblaar</td>
<td>United States Jimson weed, stinkweed, Apple of Peru; [Anglo Indian dewtry]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wag-'n-bietjie</td>
<td>Australian wait-a-while</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yesterday-today-and-tomorrow</td>
<td>Jamaican today-tomorrow mango</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Food, drink and smoking:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>askoek</td>
<td>Australian damper, devil on the coals; Jamaican bammy [Canadian sourdough bannock]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biltong</td>
<td>Canadian dry meat [pemmican], often</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

thought to be the equivalent of biltong, consists of dry meat, powdered and mixed with fat, United States jerky, charqui, jerked beef, Jamaican jerked hog, jerked meat.

bobotie
Canadian rubaboo (rough soup) [Anglo Indian pish pash (rough soup)]

bokkems
Canadian Digby chips (salted, dried herring fillets)

braaivleis
United States barbecue (also British)
Australian cook-out (also United States)

doodgool
British sad (cake, bread etc.), Jamaican dough-dough (do-do)

dop
Australian nobbler, Canadian hooker, snort smash, United States slug

green mamba
British (navy) starboard light (creme de menthe)

kudu milk / tiger's milk
Canadian moose milk, wolf juice, Australian snake juice

mealie bread (green)
United States corn pone

mebos
Jamaican dosi / dolsi (sweetmeat of mango or guava)

moes
United States mush

putu
Jamaican ton-ton, United States hominy (grits)

stompic
Australian bumper

vaaljapie
Australian red ned (bulk claret)

witblits
United States white lightning, moonshine, Canadian whisky blanc

zoll
Canadian rollie

**Structures, vehicles, shops:**

bottle store
[British wine merchant]
Australian bomb, United States jalopy

chorrie
Australian Chinee shop (Chinese)

Greek shop
Jamaican -crawl, hog-crawl, turtle-crawl etc.

kraal
Australian humpy, goondie, Jamaican wappum-bappum (various spellings)

pondok
Canadian dump car
shebeen  Australian **sly grog shop, shanty** [United States speakeasy]
skerm  Australian **wurlie**
trek wagon  United States **prairie schooner**

**Places and Place Names:**

backveld  Australian **outback, back blocks, United States boondocks, Canadian (and United States) the sticks**
bushveld  Canadian **bushland, Australian bush**
donga  Anglo Indian **nullah, Australian gully**
dorp  United States **podunk**
-gat-krans  Canadian **trou**
laagtelle  Canadian **rampart**
-pram-thornveld  Canadian **mulga country**
vlei  Canadian **marais**

**Other:**

Anglikaans  Canadian **Franglish, Francais**.
Fanakalo  Canadian **Chinook jargon (mixed traders' language)**
kitchen Dutch  Canadian **Monkey French**
kitchen kaffir  [East African **kisetla** (settler language)]
berg wind  Canadian **Chinook wind, Australian bricklayer**
Cape Doctor  Jamaican **Doctor (wind) from the sea Undertaker (wind) from the land**
monkey's wedding  Jamaican **devil rain**
gesondheid  New Zealand **kia ora**
go well / hamba kahle  [East African **kwa-heri**, Jamaican **walk good (drive good)**.
hamba  Canadian **mush on (to persons)**
loop  Canadian **mush**² (to animals)
so waar, true as God  Australian **dinkum**
vasbyt, bite one's teeth  Australian **crack hardy / hearty, British bite on the bullet, etc.**

1. cf. Dutch Kermis in de Hel.
2. from *marchez*
Jan Company
blueback
half jack
muid
scale
baklei
braak
brom
donder
drag
by = at
too good / too much
(African)
bruïdskis
goeters / goodies
crackers
goêlery
u/mafufunyana
throw the bones
babelaas
horries
poegaal
bollemakiesie
boep
bakgat
bleddy/blerry
lekker
oes, scurvy etc.

Canadian John Company (Hudson Bay Company)
United States greenback
Canadian mickey (12 fluid oz bottle)
Canadian minot, Canada bushel
Australian jackshay, (quart pot)
Australian barney
Australian break in (of virgin soil)
[St. Helena crib], Australian go crook,
go lemony
Australian stoush
Australian chew the rag (sulk), United States, British gripe etc.
Australian on (a place)
Jamaican too good
United States hope chest, Australian glory box, British bottom drawer
Canadian iktas
Canadian mitashes (leather leggings)
Canadian jongelerie
United States, Canadian pow-wow, New Zealand korero
Canadian piblokto (hysteria or madness among Eskimo women)
Australian point the bone, Canadian throw medicine
United States katzenjammer (possibly sectional, Yiddish)
Australian the dingbats (delirium tremens etc.)
Australian stonkerd
Australian head over turkey
Australian bingey, Jamaican bang-helly, bang gut
[East African maridadi]
Australian plurry, British blurry
Australian beaut, bonzer, bottler
[East African shenzi adj.]
Additional cross references between South African and Anglo Indian loan words:

It has not been possible to insert the following items in the text of Part II on account of the problems of typing them into completed pages. They will, however, be added by hand in the final version for the printer and are therefore appended here.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>South African</th>
<th>Anglo Indian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>egte</td>
<td>pukka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>basela / bonsella</td>
<td>baksheesh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bohai</td>
<td>bobbery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smear (mis)</td>
<td>leep (to wash with cowdung and water)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spoor, spoorer</td>
<td>pug, puggee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>borrie</td>
<td>purree (yellow colouring matter)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tammeletjie</td>
<td>misree (sugar candy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mlnugu</td>
<td>Gora (white man, Englishman)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dagga</td>
<td>bhang (hemp) ganja</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kloof</td>
<td>tangi (gorge, defile)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skelm</td>
<td>nut-cut (natkhat, rogue)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tronk</td>
<td>cho(o)ky</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>katel</td>
<td>cot (light bedstead)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afdak</td>
<td>godown (warehouse)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skinder (n.)</td>
<td>gup (gossip)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>martevaan</td>
<td>martaban (vessel of peculiar pottery)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secunde</td>
<td>Naib (deputy governor)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fundi</td>
<td>pundit (teacher, expert)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dam</td>
<td>tank (pool, lake, artificial reservoir)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skerm/pondok</td>
<td>pandal (shed, booth or arbour for temporary use)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spog</td>
<td>buck (bragging talk)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>krans bee</td>
<td>lingar (wild bee)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opskud</td>
<td>jildi (be quick)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skans</td>
<td>sungar (breastwork of stone)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The foregoing lists give a limited but I hope representative sample of the type of cross references produced by this part of the study. It has not been possible to list them all, or to list them systematically as they have been inserted into the text at various times and not in alphabetical sequence or even one dialect at a time. The sample lists follow a rough categorisation similar to that upon which 4.2 is based.

1. The source of the material, Indian Words in English by G. Subba Rao (Oxford 1969), came to hand too late for their inclusion.
Note:

The terms are all inserted into the entries in the same way namely cf. Austr. ______, U.S. ______, Canad. ______, following the definition of the South African word, and preceding the illustrative quotation. In certain cases where the cross reference has been an afterthought or has been found too late for proper insertion in the text an asterisked foot- or marginal-note has been used instead. Only in a few cases is the meaning or an explanation given of the compared term e.g. pram- ... cf. Canad. mamelle, a breast shaped hill, or jacopever ... cf. Austr. Sergeant Baker, a highly coloured fish.

In conclusion I would like to add that cross dialect study, even on so small a scale, has proved interesting enough to be a fruitful field, I hope, for future research.
BIBLIOGRAPHY

Introductory note:
The bibliography which follows includes both reference works consulted in the preparation of the commentary and the text, and the sources from which illustrative material has been drawn.

It is proposed that, substantially, the same bibliography should appear in the dictionary, since probably no good purpose would be served by an attempt to present it in a different form possibly combined and alphabetised, as opposed to the sections in which it is divided here namely:

I. Dictionaries
II. Other Reference Works
III. Newspapers and Magazines read and/or quoted
IV. Word Sources read and/or quoted
V. Other sources.

Citations
Following the practice of the major Oxford Dictionaries the date is placed last in each case. In the event of an edition or impression other than the first having been the one used, the date of publication, if available, follows the title, and the date of the edition quoted or consulted follows the name of the publisher and place of publication.

The form followed, except in the cases of dictionaries where the name of the company e.g. Webster, Harrap, Cassell is more prominent than that of the editor or compiler, is as follows:

Author's name, initials or first name(s)  Title
Other details if any
Publisher, Place of Publication, Date.

This form gives somewhat more detail than the usual Oxford Dictionary citation, though when word sources have very long subtitles these are usually omitted. For reference works these are normally retained.

Reading
In Section IV works personally read and consulted by the writer are marked with an asterisk for the purpose of giving an idea of the scope of reading done for this work. Those works not read in their entirety are marked with an asterisk in parentheses. Those unmarked have been read by others but quotations taken from them appear in the text.

I. Dictionaries
These include Dictionaries of English, Afrikaans and Dutch and foreign language dictionaries used or consulted in the compilation of
the text; also dialect dictionaries or dialect supplements to other dictionaries which have been used for cross references between South African English and other forms of English, American, Canadian, Scottish, Australian, New Zealand, Anglo Indian etc.

In this section are the Latin and Greek lexicons used and what might be called 'sectional' language dictionaries: those of slang, vulgarisms (B.E. Gent, Grose and Partridge); that of the Low Dutch element in the English vocabulary prepared by Bense; and the Oxford Dictionary of Etymology. All other reference works, including Daniel Jones's Pronouncing Dictionary of English, used in conjunction with the phonetics texts, and two legal dictionaries, appear in Section II. Section I then, consists almost exclusively of 'language' dictionaries, bilingual, dialect or explanatory.

II. Other Reference Works

These are listed alphabetically by authors or editors and no attempt has been made to group them by subjects e.g. Phonetics, Place Names, Biology, Law, History etc.

Works used for reference in these subjects are also quoted in the text of the Compact Dictionary and where this is so the title appears in the list of word sources as well. This has been inevitable in the case of such works as the Cambridge History of the British Empire Vol. VIII South Africa; The Handbook for Farmers in South Africa 1937, Common Names of South African Plants 1966, standard texts on birds, fish and trees and Pettman's Africanderisms, which have been used extensively for both information and material for quotations. The unpublished work of Dr. C.P. Swart, Africanderisms; A supplement to the Rev. Charles Pettman's Glossary of South African Colloquial Words and Phrases and other Names, has been drawn on for quotations. Some duplication therefore in this section and in Section IV does occur.

Although all dictionaries 'proper' are listed in Section I, Section II includes Boshoff and Nienaber's Afrikaanse Etimologie, Pettman's Africanderisms (described by him as a 'glossary'), M.D.W. Jeffries's Supplementary Africanderisms which appeared in sections in Africana Notes and News, the various issues of the Index of English Usage in S.A. by Beeton and Dorner, and Dr C.P. Swart's work mentioned above.

Roget's Thesaurus, which has been used in connection with categorisation and the taxonomic approach generally, and Daniel Jones's Everyman's Pronouncing Dictionary of English used in the designing of the pronunciation system, are likewise listed here, as are two legal dictionaries, Bell's S.Afr. Legal Dictionary Supplement 1957, and the S.Afr. Judicial Dictionary of J.J.L. Sisson 1960, which latter has been quoted in the text as well as consulted.
on certain points of legal usage and appears in Section IV also.

The other texts in this section are for the most part standard texts in linguistics and dialect, and standard indispensable specialist reference works on Fauna and Flora, History and Geography and even cookery.

III Newspapers and Magazines

The press and illustrated papers have been important major sources of material quoted in the text: reports in the daily press produce political terms and the names of officials and institutions; recipes, the names of dishes or ingredients; gardening articles, the names of plants, and fiction and advertisement colloquialisms as well. A source of numerous slang items has been a feature devoted to South African expressions at the most colloquial level - Backchat by Blossom Broadbeam in Darling. This has produced printed instances of words usually encountered only in speech. Technical or geographical articles in South African Panorama have also provided a number of useful items and the Farmer's Weekly, fiction, copy or advertisements, has been a never-failing source of supply. Post and Drum regularly read have given many examples of urban African usage. Papers seen less often like The Leader and The Graphic, both Durban Indian papers, Bona, a less sophisticated magazine than Drum, The World (formerly Bantu World), and the Cape Herald, an entirely Coloured paper, have all contributed to the illustrative material. The black press in English is, I hope, well represented.

Of the daily papers it is most usually the local ones which are quoted, and of the Sunday papers, the Sunday Times. It is unfortunately not possible to 'keep up' with regular reading of as many papers as one would wish.

IV. Word Sources read and/or quoted:

This is, as far as possible, a comprehensive list of the various sources from which the illustrative quotations have been drawn, including those in Section II. It does not however include those dictionaries from Section I which are quoted verbatim in certain cases for purposes of etymology or other comment. The list appears here as it will in the draft Dictionary itself with one difference only, namely that the titles of works personally read by the writer are asterisked as mentioned above.

Other works have been read or partly read by members of the staff of the Dictionary of South African English, Institute for the Study of English in Africa, Rhodes University, members of the Dictionary Committee, or in some instances by outside readers or friends of the Dictionary project. The quotations on file have been at my disposal in the compilation of the draft Dictionary so a very broad field is reflected here, and quotations from the
reading of a number of people have been used. [See acknowledgements]

Numerous quotations also, as was mentioned in the note on Section II of this bibliography, have been taken from reference works on various aspects of South Africa which are, accordingly, listed as word sources if they have been used as such.

It may be noted here that titles given in full in this Section are in numerous cases abbreviated in the text in the interests of saving space and in keeping with established precedent.

The sources, apart from the standard works mentioned above, are extremely varied, and include early and contemporary fiction, novels and short stories, poetry, some children's books, diaries and reminiscences, and other memoirs, biographies, histories, anthropological works, works and textbooks on farming and animal husbandry, legal text books, cookery books and numerous early descriptions of the Cape.

Although this text has not been prepared on historical principles very many of the illustrative quotations have been drawn from sources of quite early date. These have been selected usually on the grounds of their intrinsic interest rather than on those of relative antiquity. Certain items, labelled Historical or even Obsolete, are likely, in the circumstances, to be illustrated from early texts e.g. travellers' terms such as 'the field' (veld), 'diving goat' (duiker), 'girdle of famine.' Early texts include the works of travellers and naturalists such as Burchell, Sparrman, Le Vaillant, Thunberg, Alexander, Webster, temporary residents such as Lady Anne Barnard, Lady Duff Gordon, James Ewart, a young officer stationed at the Cape from 1811-1814 and Christopher Webb Smith - an artist and civil servant on furlough from India 1835-1837.

Also included are the works of settlers like Thomas Pringle, Thomas Philipps and H.H. Dugmore and the numerous diaries, chronicles or reminiscences later published - or unpublished - of Jeremiah Goldswain, Thomas Stubbs, James Hancock, James Collett, Sophia Pigot, Eliza Jane Dugmore, Thomas Shone; military memoirs such as the Narrative of Private Buck Adams and James Mckay's Reminiscences of the Last Kaffir War, and those of Missionaries such as George Barker, John Ayliff, Jos. Whiteside and William Shaw.

Note: Many of the illustrative quotations have been taken from cards in the files of the Dictionary of South African English on Historical Principles; these have been copied by many hands and the possibility of minor slips in copying of punctuation etc. is always present.

1 Ladislav Zgusta in his Manual of Lexicography (1971) p208 comments as follows: '... dialect dictionaries are based either on oral material ... on different questionnaires, or on written sources if there are texts written in the dialects, or on both. If there are numerous written texts and if they have a sufficiently long tradition, the respective dialect dictionary will naturally tend to acquire a historical character.'

2 (Hunger belt).
DETAILED BIBLIOGRAPHY

I. DICTIONARIES:

Afrikaanse Woordenboek, Die
W.A.T. Universiteit Stellenbosch 1951

American Heritage Dictionary
Houghton Mifflin, New York, 1969

American Heritage Dictionary,
paperback edition, New York, 1970

Appelton's New Spanish-English and English
Spanish Dictionary, Arturo Cuyas.
Appleton & Co., London, 1909

Avis, Walter S. edit. Dictionary of Canadianisms
W.G. Gage, Toronto, 1967

Bosman, D.B., van der Merwe, I.W. and Hiemstra, L.W.
Tweetalige Woordenboek,
Sewende Verbeterde Uitgawe, 2de Druk
Nasionale Boekhandel Bpk., Kaapstad,
Bloemfontein, Johannesburg, 1969

Ibid. Tafelberg-Uitgewers Bpk., Kaapstad,
Johannesburg, 1972

Bosman, D.B., van der Merwe, I.W. and Barnes, S.V.
Tweetalige Skoolwoordenboek
Eighth edition, 1964

Bense, J.F. Dictionary of the Low Dutch Element in the
English Vocabulary,
Martinus Nijhoff, The Hague, 1939

Burchfield, R.W. Supplement of Australian and New Zealand Words
Oxford, 1969. See also Oxford Dictionaries
and at Onions, C.T.

Canting Crew, Dictionary of the see Gent, B.E.

Cassell Compact German-English and English-German
Dictionary,
Eleventh edition, 1947

Cassell Dutch Dictionary compiled F. P.N. Prick van
Wely 1951

Cassidy, F.G. and le Page, R.B.
Dictionary of Jamaican English,
Cambridge University Press, 1967

Chambers Twentieth Century English Dictionary
de Vries, Jan  
Doke, C.M. and Vilakazi, B.W.  
Friedrichsen, G.W.S. edit. See Onions, C.T.  
Gent, B.E.  
Grose, Captain Francis, edit. Eric Partridge  
Hoare, Alfred  
Johnson, Samuel  
Klatt, E. and Klatt, G.  
le Page, R.B.  
Liddell and Scott  
Matthews, Mitford  
Novo Diccionario Portatil  
Onions, C.T., Friedrichsen, G.W.W. and Burchfield, R.W.  

Nederlands Etymologisch Woordenboek  
A Zulu English Dictionary  
See Onions, C.T.  
A New Dictionary of the Terms Ancient and Modern of the Canting Crew  
A Classical Dictionary of the Vulgar Tongue  
Harrap's Shorter French and English Dictionary  
A Short Italian Dictionary, Vol. I  
Johnson's Dictionary: A Modern Selection  
Langenscheidt's Pocket Dictionary of the English and German Language  
A Dictionary of Americanisms  
Portugueza e Ingleza  
Oxford Dictionary of English Etymology  
Oxford English Dictionaries  
(1) The New English Dictionary Vols. I - X.  
(4) Oxford English Dictionary Supplement, Oxford, 1933


(8) **Oxford Dictionary of English Etymology**, see Onions, C.T.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Edition/Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>See also Grose, Captain Francis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Takahashi, M.</td>
<td>Romanized English-Japanese and Japanese-English Dictionary</td>
<td>Taisedo : Kobe 1953 (Taiwan edition)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Webster's Dictionaries</td>
<td>G. &amp; C. Merriam Company, Springfield, Massachusetts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2) Third New International Dictionary of the English Language Unabridged</td>
<td>edit: Gore, P.B. Taiwan edition, one volume, 1972</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(3) Seventh New Collegiate Dictionary</td>
<td>1961 G. &amp; C. Merriam Company, Springfield, Massachusetts</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Yule, Col. Henry, and Burnell, Arthur Coke
Hobson Jobson - being a Glossary of Anglo-Indian Colloquial Words and Phrases
edit. William Crooke 1866

II. OTHER REFERENCE WORKS [for Addenda to this Section see pp.238-9

Abercrombie, David
Elements of General Phonetics,
University of Edinburgh Press 1967

Abercrombie, David
The Recording of Dialect Material in Phonetics in Linguistics
edit. Jones, W.E. and Laver J.
Longman's, London, 1973

Agriculture and Forestry, Department of
Handbook for Farmers in South Africa
edit. Seymore, D.J.
Government Printer, Pretoria, 1937

Aldridge, M.V.
A Pilot Study for a Dictionary of South African English on Historical Principles
TaalLasette 10, Van Schik, Pretoria 1969

Agriculture and Forestry, Department of
Handbook for Farmers in South Africa
edit. Seymore, D.J.
Government Printer, Pretoria, 1937

Anderson, Wallace L and Stageberg, Norman C.
Introductory Readings on Language
Revised edit. 1966

Baker, Sidney J.
The Australian Language: an examination of the English language and English speech as used in Australia from convict days to the present, with special reference to the growth of indigenous idiom and its use by Australian writers.

Beeton, D.R. and Dorner, Helen edit.
English Usage in Southern Africa 1970-1973
Vol. I No. II June 1970
Vol. III No. II June 1971
Vol. IV No. II Dec. 1971
Vol. V No. II June 1972
Vol. VI No. II Dec. 1972
Vol. VII No. II March 1973
Vol. VIII No. II June 1973
Printed by the University of South Africa, Pretoria

Bell
South African Legal Dictionary
3rd edition, Butterworth & Co. (Africa) Ltd., Durban, 1951

Bell
South African Legal Dictionary Supplement
Butterworth (Africa) Ltd., Durban, 1957

Biden, Leo
Sea Angling Fishes of the Cape
Oxford 1930
Afrikaanse Etimologieë
Die Suid Afrikaanse Akademie vir Wetenskap en Kuns, Pretoria 1967

Place Names in the Cape Province
Juta, Cape Town, no date, circa 1926

Aardvark to Zwarthout in Seven Studies in English
edit. Roberts, G.
Purnell, Cape Town 1971

A History of Native Policy in South Africa
Nasionale Pers, Cape Town 1924

An Investigation into the use of English by the
Indians in South Africa, UNISA PhD thesis,
1968-1972

Cambridge History of the British Empire
Vol. VIII South Africa
edit. Eric Walker
Cambridge University Press 1936

The Dialect of Jeremiah Goldswain, Albany
Settler
Oxford University Press 1955

Ons Plaas- en Plekname in Buurman,
Junie-Augustus 1973

Afrikaanse Klankleer
Fonetiek, Fonologie en Woordbou
A.A. Balkema, Cape Town 1965

see Beeton, D.R.
see McDavid, Raven I. Jr.

Die Leksikologie van Afrikaans
Taalfasette 1969 No. 9
van Schaik, Pretoria

Tarheel Talk, A historical study of the English
Language in North Carolina to 1860
University of N. Carolina Press, Chapel Hill 1956

South African English Dialect: A Literature
Survey, Institute for Languages, Literature and
Arts, Human Sciences Research Council,
Pretoria 1972

Snakes of Southern Africa
Maskew Miller 1921

A Field Guide to the Snakes of Southern Africa,

The Old Houses of the Cape
A.A. Balkema, Cape Town 1965

A First Guide to South African Birds
5th edit. Maskew Miller, Cape Town 1956

An Introduction to the Pronunciation of English
Edward Arnold, London 1962

Bird-Lore of the Eastern Cape Province
"Bantu Studies" Monograph Studies Series No. 2
Witwatersrand University Press, Johannesburg 1941

South African Year Book and Guide
Robert Hale, London 1951

Dialect, Language, Nation 1966 reprinted in
Sociolinguistics
edit. Pride, J.B. and Holmes, J.
Penguin 1972

The Milner Papers 1897-1899
Cassell, London 1931
Herrman, L.  
*Note on Cape English Idiom*
English Studies in Africa, Vol. 2, No. 2
September 1959

Hopwood, D.  
*South African English Pronunciation*
Juta, Cape Town 1928

International Phonetic Association  
*Principles of the International Phonetic Association*
University College London Reprint 1965

I.S.E.A.  
*Towards a Dictionary of South African English*
Institute for the Study of English in Africa, Rhodes University, Grahamstown 1971

Jackson, P.B.N.  
*Common and Scientific Names of Freshwater Fishes of Southern Africa*
Piscator No. 90, Autumn 1974

Jeffreys, M.D.W.  
*Afrikanderisms I, II, III;*  
I Africana Notes and News, Vol. 16, June 1964  
II Africana Notes and News, Vol. 17, No. 5, March 1967  

Jones, Daniel  
*An Outline of English Phonetics*
Heffer, Cambridge 1957

Jones, Daniel  
*Everyman's Pronouncing Dictionary*
Dent, London 1967

King, N.L.  
*Tree Planting in South Africa*
Reprinted from the Journal of the South African Forestry Association, No. 21, October 1951

Koolhoven, H.  
*Teach Yourself Dutch*
English Universities Press 1941/1956

Lanham, L.W. and Traill, A.  
*South African Pronunciation*

Lanham, L.W. and Traill, A.  
*Pronounce English Correctly*
Longmans, South Africa 1965

Lanham, L.W.  
*The Way We Speak*
van Schaik, Pretoria 1967

Lanham, L.W.  
*The Pronunciation of South African English*
A.A. Balkema, Cape Town 1967

Lennox-Short, A.  
*Trends in South Africa's English* in Seven Studies in English  
edited by C.R. Furnell, Cape Town 1971

Lewcock, Ronald  
*Early Nineteenth Century Architecture in South Africa*
A.A. Balkema, Cape Town 1963

Lewis, M.B.  
*Teach Yourself Malay*

Liversidge, R.  
See McLachlan, G.R.

Mackie, W.S.  
*Afrikanderisms, Standard Encyclopaedia of Southern Africa,* Vol. I, pp. 188-191  
Nasou 1970
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Edition/Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>McDavid, Raven I. Jr.</td>
<td>Lexicography in English</td>
<td>New York Academy of Sciences Vol. 211 June 8, 1973</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marckwardt, Albert</td>
<td>American English</td>
<td>Oxford University Press, 1958</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Martinet, André</td>
<td>Elements of General Linguistics (English Translation)</td>
<td>Faber, London 1960</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meer, Fatima</td>
<td>Portraits of Indian South Africans</td>
<td>Avon House, Durban 1969</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Milner, Sir Alfred, later Viscount</td>
<td>The Milner Papers 1897-1899</td>
<td>edit. C. Headlam Cassell, London 1931</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nature Conservation, Department of</td>
<td>Some Protected Wild Flowers of the Cape Province</td>
<td>Published by the Department of Nature Conservation, Cape Provincial Administration 1967</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nienaber, P.J.</td>
<td>Suid-Afrikaanse Pleknaamwoordeboek Deel I</td>
<td>S.A. Boeksentrum, Cape Town 1963</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O'Grady, John</td>
<td>Aussie English</td>
<td>1965 Ure Smith, Sydney, Sixteenth Impression 1973</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palmer, Eve and Pitman, Norah</td>
<td>The Trees of South Africa</td>
<td>A.A. Balkema, Cape Town 1961</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pettman, Reverend Charles</td>
<td>South African Place Names, Past and Present</td>
<td>Daily Representative Limited, Queenstown 1931</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ripman, Walter</td>
<td>The Sounds of Spoken English</td>
<td>J.M. Dent and Sons Ltd., London and Toronto 1923</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The names of authors of numerous papers in this collection are cited in the text, and in footnotes to it, with titles and page numbers. They do not appear in this list of references.
Roberts, Austin

The Birds of South Africa
Witherby, 1940 and Central News Agency, London and Johannesburg, 1944

Roget, Peter Mark

Thesaurus of English Words and Phrases
1936 edit. Reprinted 1946

Rosenthal, Eric

Encyclopaedia of Southern Africa

Sabbagha, N.G.

South Africa's Contribution to the English Vocabulary
Taalfasette 8, 1969. van Schaik, Pretoria

Sabbagha, N.G.

Nasou, Cape Town, 1971

Sclater, W.L.

The Fauna of South Africa
Vol. I The Mammals of South Africa, 1900
Vol. II The Mammals of South Africa, 1901
R.H. Porter, London, 1900, 1901

Setzer, H.W.

See Meester, J.

Sisson, J.J.L.

South African Judicial Dictionary
Butterworth, Durban, 1960

Smith, C.A.

Common Names of South African Plants
edit. Phillips, E. Percy and van Hoepen, Estelle
Government Printer, Pretoria, 1966

Smith, J.L.B.

Sea Fishes of Southern Africa 1949

Smith, J.L.B.

Sea Fishes of Southern Africa,

Smuts, J.

Die Byvoeglike Verbuiging in Afrikaans,
Taalfasette No.10, 1969 Van Schaik, Pretoria

South African Ornithological Society List Committee

Check List of the Birds of South Africa
Cape Town, 1969

Stageberg, Norman

The Sound System of English in
Anderson, Wallace L. and Stageberg, Norman C.
Introductory Readings on Language, 1962
Holt Rinehart and Winston, New York, 1966 (edit.)

Swart, C.P.

Africanderisms: A Supplement to the Rev.
Charles Pettman's Glossary of South African Colloquial Words and Phrases and Other Names.
M.A. Thesis University of South Africa, Pretoria, 1934

van Blerk, N.

South Africanisms in the Oxford English Dictionary

Walker, Eric

A History of South Africa
Longmans, Green & Co., London, 1928
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Publisher and Location</th>
<th>Year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wille, George</td>
<td>Principles of South African Law, being a textbook of the Civil Law of the Union. 2nd edit. Juta, Cape Town and Johannesburg 1945</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wille, George</td>
<td>The Law of Mortgage and Pledge in South Africa</td>
<td>Juta, Cape Town and Johannesburg, 1961</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fitzsimons, V.F.M.</td>
<td>Snakes of Southern Africa</td>
<td>Purnell, Cape Town 1962</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ADDENDA TO SECTION II

OTHER REFERENCE WORKS

Allen, Harold B
Appleton-Century-Crofts, New York 1964

Arnauld, Antoine
La Logique ou L'Art de Penser
The Art of Thinking trans. Dickoff, James and James, Patricia.
Bobbs-Merrill United States of America 1964

Arnold, I.V.
The English Word (1966) Moskva "Visshaya Shkola"
Moscow 1973

Barnhart, Clarence L.
Problems in Editing Commercial Dictionaries
No. 55 in Readings in Applied English Linguistics.
See Allen, Harold B.

Branford, William R.G.
Report No. 2 (1970)
English Institute, Rhodes University, Grahamstown 1970

Branford, William R.G.

Ebbitt, Wilma R.
See Sledd, James

Gleason, H.A.
An Introduction to Descriptive Linguistics (1955)
Holt Rinehart and Winston, New York 1961

Johnson, Samuel
A Plan for a Dictionary of the English Language; addressed to the Right Honourable Philip Dormer, Earl of Chesterfield, One of His Majesty's Principal Secretaries of State.
Scolar Press Facsimile 1970

Marckwardt, Albert H.
Dictionaries and the English Language in Introductory Readings on Language (1962) edit.

Murray, Sir James

O'Connor, J.D.
Phonetics (Pelican)
Penguin Books, Harmondsworth, Middlesex 1973

Rao, C. Subba
Indian Words in English
Oxford University Press, Oxford 1969

Schane, Sanford A.
Generative Phonology
Prentice Hall Inc. Inglewood Cliffs New Jersey 1973

Sledd, James and Ebbitt, Wilma R.
Dictionaries and THAT Dictionary: A Casebook on the Aims of Lexicographers and the Targets of Reviewers.


**Note:** Authors of papers delivered at the International Conference on Lexicography in English held in June 1972, the proceedings of which are published as *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences Number 211 8th June 1973*, edited by Raven I. McDavid and Audrey Duckert, include the following: Harold B. Allen, Edward Artin, Audrey Duckert, Edward Gates, Madeleine Mathiot, Virginia McDavid and Ladislav Zgusta.

Where their remarks are cited in Part I the titles of their papers are given in the footnotes with the reference *Lexicography in English* (see McDavid and Duckert), as the titles of both volume and paper would be very lengthy, and the title of the paper itself probably more useful at the relevant position in the text than given in detail here.
III NEWSPAPERS AND MAGAZINES: (Word Sources quoted)

Argus, Cape The
Bona (African)
Cape Argus (Cape Town) now The Argus
Cape Herald (Cape Town)
Cape Times (Cape Town)
Darling
Daily Dispatch (East London)
Daily News (Durban)
Drum (black)
Eastern Province Herald (Port Elizabeth)
English Alive, 1968
Evening Post (Port Elizabeth) freq. Saturday edit. known as Week end Post, cited throughout as Evening Post.
Fair Lady
Farmer's Weekly
Fiat Lux (Indian)
Forum
Friend, The (Bloemfontein)
George Advertiser No. 278
14.4.1870 George Town, Cape of Good Hope
Grahamstown Journal 1831-1835 Vol. IV No. 192
Graphic, The (Indian)
Grocott's Mail (Grahamstown)
Het Suid Western (S. W. Cape)
Ilanga (African)
Lantern
Leader, The (Indian)
Muslim Digest
Panorama, South African
Personality
Pretoria News
Rand Daily Mail (Johannesburg)
Rhodeo (Student Paper, Rhodes University, Grahamstown)
Scope
Star, The (Johannesburg)
Standpunte
Suid Westelike Herald (S. W. Cape)
Sunday Times (Johannesburg)
Sunday Tribune (Natal)
The 1820
The World (Weekend World) (African)
* Financial Mail

Crozier
IV WORD SOURCES:

* Abrahams, Peter
  Mine Boy
  Faber and Faber, London 1946, 1954 edit.

* Abrahams, Peter
  Tell Freedom
  Faber and Faber, London, 1954

* Adams, Buck
  The Narrative of Private Buck Adams
  7th (Princess Royal's) Dragoon Guards on the Eastern Frontier of the Cape of Good Hope 1843-1848
  MS. dated July 4th 1884
  edit. Gordon-Brown, A. The Van Riebeeck Society, V.R.S. Publication No. 22, Cape Town 1941

* Adams, T.P.
  An Eulogy on Dr. Alexander Cowie and Benjamin Green
  L.H. Meurant, Grahamstown, 1830,
  (1st publication to be printed in Grahamstown.)

Agriculture and Forestry, Department of
  Handbook for Farmers in South Africa

* Alexander, James Edward
  Narrative of a Voyage of Observation Among the Colonies of Western Africa in the Flag Ship Thalia and of a Campaign in Kaffir-land on the Staff of the Commander-in-Chief in 1835
  in two volumes
  Henry Colburn Publisher, London, 1837

* Alexander, Sir James Edward
  MS. annotated sketchbook dated 1878
  Collection A. Gordon-Brown.

* Almanacs, Cape

* African Court Calendars for 1807, 1809, 1815, 1819.
  Printed and compiled by Geo. Ross, Cape Town.

* African Court Calendar and Directory for 1822
  Compiled by A. Richert Snr., Cape Town

* African Court Calendar and Directory for 1826

* South African Almanac and Directory for 1827

* South African Directory Advertiser for 1831
  South African Almanac'and Directory for the year 1831
  By George Greig, Cape Town.

* South African Directory and Advertiser for 1833 and South African Almanac and Directory for 1834
  By George Greig, Cape Town.

* South African Directory and Advertiser for the Year 1834 and The South African Directory and Almanac for the year 1834
  By George Greig, Cape Town

* Cape of Good Hope Almanac and Annual Register for 1841
  B.J. van de Sandt, Cape Town.

* Cape of Good Hope Almanac and Annual Register for 1843
  B.J. van de Sandt, Cape Town

* Cape of Good Hope Almanac and Annual Register for 1845
  B.J. van de Sandt, Cape Town.
* Cape of Good Hope Almanac and Annual Register for 1847
Compiled by B.J. van de Sandt, Late Superintendent of the Government Printing Office.

* Cape of Good Hope Almanac and Annual Register for 1848
Compiled by B.J. van de Sandt.

* Cape of Good Hope Almanac and Annual Register for 1853
Compiled by B.J. van de Sandt de Villiers.

* Cape of Good Hope Almanac and Annual Register for 1856
B.J. van de Sandt de Villiers, Cape Town

* Cape Town Directory, 1866.
Chas. Goode, Cyrus J. Martin, Cape Town.

Hurst and Blackett, London.
Reprint C. Struik, Cape Town, 1969

Atmore, M.G. Cape Furniture
Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1965

Ayliff, The Rev. John see Whiteside, the Rev. Jos.

Baraitser, M. and Obholzer, A. Cape Country Furniture
A.A. Balkema, Cape Town, 1971

Barker, George Diary Transcript
1815-1828 Theopolis and Bethelsdorp

*Barnard, Lady Anne, also Barnard, Andrew Extracts from Lady Anne Barnard at the Cape
1797-1802 Dorothea Fairbridge, Oxford, 1924

*Barnard, Lady Anne Journal in The Lives of the Lindsays

*Barnard, Lady Anne Letters and Journals in South Africa a Century Ago
Maskew Miller, Cape Town, 1924

*Beck, Hastings Meet the Cape Wines
Purnell and Sons, Cape Town, 1955

Becker, Peter Sandy Tracks to the Kraals
Dagbreek, Johannesburg, 1956

*Beeton, D.R. edit. Poetry 1974
University of South Africa English Studies, Pretoria, 1974

*Beeton, D.R. and Dorner, Helen edit. English Usage in Southern Africa
See Section II

3rd edit. Hortors, Johannesburg, 1961

Bird, W. Wilberforce State of the Cape of Good Hope in 1822 by a Civil Servant in the Colony
John Murray, London, 1823

Birkby, Carel Thirstland Treks
Faber and Faber, London, 1936
Bisset, C. B.        Sport and War in Africa        John Murray, London, 1875
Black, Stephen     The Dorp        2nd edit. Andrew Melrose, London, 1920
Bosman, Herman    A Cask of Jerepigo        no date.
                 Charles                                        Dassie editions.
Bosman, Herman    Mafeking Road        1947, 1969 edit.
                 Charles                                        Human and Rousseau, Cape Town, Pretoria, 1965
Bosman, Herman    Unto Dust        edit. Lionel Abrahams
                 Charles                                        Human and Rousseau, Cape Town, Pretoria, 1963
* Bosman, Herman   A Bekkersdal Marathon        edit. Lionel Abrahams
                 Charles                                        Human and Rousseau, Cape Town, Pretoria, 1971
* Bosman, Herman   Jurie Steyn's Post Office        edit. Lionel Abrahams
                 Charles                                        Human and Rousseau, Cape Town, Pretoria, 1971
Botha, C. Graham  Our South Africa: Past and Present
                  Cape Times, Cape Town for the United Tobacco Company, 1938
* Bower, Lola      Zulu Boy        Hutchinson, London, 1960
Bowker, T.H.       A Journal 1834 - 1835        Cory Library MS. 1951
Boyle, F.          To the Cape for Diamonds        Chapman and Hall, London, 1873
Braby              Durban Directory, 1950
(e) Bradlow, Edna   Here Comes the Alabama        A.A. Balkema, Cape Town, 1958
                 and Frank
Brett Young, Francis They Seek a Country        Heineman, London, 1937
Brett Young, Francis City of Gold        The Book Club, London, 1940
* Brink, André P.   The Birds        an adaptation and translation of Die Hand vol Vere
                 and Hewitt, W. H.                                        André P. Brink, based on the Birds of
                                                                Aristophanes
                                                                Typescript lent by authors, 1973
Brinkman, H. L.    Breath of the Karroo        Herbert Jenkins, London, 1915
Brookes, Edgar     A History of Native Policy in South Africa
                                                                Nationale Pers, Cape Town, 1924
Brown, George Gordon and Brown, Alfred Samler        Brown's South Africa
                                                                Sampson Low, London, 1893
The Golden Vessel
Juta, Cape Town and Johannesburg, 1919

Problems and Tensions in South Africa
Political Science Quarterly, New York, 1955

Pioneer Days in Natal
Shuter and Shooter, Pietermaritzburg, 1934

Lost Trails of the Low Veld
Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1951

Travels in the Interior of Southern Africa
Vol. I, 1822
Longman, Hurst, Rees, Orme, Brown and Green, London, 1822

Travels in the Interior of Southern Africa
Vol. II, 1824
Longman, Hurst, Rees, Orme Brown and Green, London, 1824

Take Root or Die
1966, published A.A. Balkema, Cape Town, 1970

Cape Charade

Collected Poems

The Cape of Good Hope and her Eastern Province of Algoa Bay
1843 J.S. Christophers, London
Facsimile, C. Struik, Cape Town, 1967

The Autobiography of an Old Drifter
Harrap, London, 1936

Turning Wheels
Collins, London, 1937

Watch for the Dawn
Collins, London, 1939

The Hill of Doves
Houghton Mifflin, Boston, 1942

Rags of Glory
Collins, London, 1963

The Writing on the Wall and Other African Stories

One Life
New Coin Poetry
Purnell, Cape Town, 1966

Reminiscences of Kimberley
Bennett & Co., London, 1911

The Religious System of the Amazulu
Publications of the Folk-Lore Society XV (1884)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Publisher and Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Collett, James</td>
<td>MS. Account; Diary and Memoranda</td>
<td>Lent by 1820 Settler Museum, Grahamstown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de Kiewiet, C.W.</td>
<td>Fears and Pressures in the Union of South Africa</td>
<td>1954, Virginia Quarterly Review, S.A.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pamphlets 89, Cory Library</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De Kock, Victor</td>
<td>Those in Bondage</td>
<td>Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1950</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de Kock, Victor</td>
<td>The Fun They Had</td>
<td>Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1955</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Dhlomo, R.R.R.</td>
<td>An African Tragedy</td>
<td>Lovedale Institution Press, 1928</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dodd, A.D. edit.</td>
<td>An Anthology of Short Stories by South African Writers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No date</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dorner, Helen and Beeton, D.R. edit.</td>
<td>See Beeton, D.R.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Duckitt, Hildagonda</td>
<td>Book of Recipes</td>
<td>A.A. Balkema, Cape Town, 1966</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>edit. M. Kuttel</td>
<td>Letters from the Cape 1861-1862</td>
<td>edit. Fairbridge, Dorothea Juta, Cape Town, 1925</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Duff Gordon, Lady</td>
<td>Reminiscences of an Albany Settler</td>
<td>1870, Grahamstown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Dugmore, H.H.</td>
<td>Diary 1871 (Covering a Journey to the Diamond Fields) Typed transcript lent by Professor Guy Butler</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Dugmore, Eliza Jane</td>
<td>The Cape Malays</td>
<td>Maskew Miller, Cape Town, 1944</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du Plessis, I.D.</td>
<td>The Malay Quarter and its People</td>
<td>A.A. Balkema, Cape Town, 1953</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du Val, Charles</td>
<td>Thorny Harvest</td>
<td>Central News Agency South Africa Ltd.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edmondstone, F.J.</td>
<td>Diary 1901</td>
<td>Pringle Collection MS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emslie, Ethel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Publisher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ewart, James, edit.</td>
<td>James Ewart's Journal covering his stay at the Cape of Good Hope 1811-1814 and his part in the expedition to Florida and New Orleans edit. with an introduction by A. Gordon-Brown.</td>
<td>C. Struik, Cape Town, 1970</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gordon-Brown, A.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fairbridge, Dorothea</td>
<td>That Which Hath Been</td>
<td>Maskew Miller, Cape Town, 1913</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fairbridge, Dorothea</td>
<td>Lady Anne Barnard at the Cape 1797-1802</td>
<td>Clarendon Press, Oxford, 1924</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fairbridge, Dorothea</td>
<td>See Duff Gordon, Lady</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farini, G.A.</td>
<td>Through the Kalahari Desert. A narrative of a journey with gun, camera and notebook to Lake Ngami and back.</td>
<td>Sampson, Low, Marston, Searle and Rimington, London, 1886</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fehr, William</td>
<td>Farmer's Annual and S.A. Farm Doctor</td>
<td>Farmer's Weekly, Bloemfontein, 1914</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fitzpatrick, Sir Percy</td>
<td>Jock of the Bushveld</td>
<td>Longmans Green &amp; Co. 1909</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fitzroy, V.M.</td>
<td>Dark Bright Land</td>
<td>Maskew Miller, Cape Town, 1955</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flemming, Leonard</td>
<td>A Fool on the Veld</td>
<td>A.C. White, Bloemfontein, 1944</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fransen, H. and Cook, M.A.</td>
<td>The Old Houses of the Cape</td>
<td>A.A. Balkema, Cape Town, 1965</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fransen, H.</td>
<td>The Stellenbosch Museum</td>
<td>Board of Trustees of the Stellenbosch Museum, 1967</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fugard, Athol</td>
<td>The Blood Knot</td>
<td>Simondium Publishers, Johannesburg, 1963</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fugard, Athol</td>
<td>Boesman and Lena</td>
<td>Buren, Cape Town, 1969</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fulton, Anthony</td>
<td>The Dark Side of Mercy</td>
<td>Purnell, Cape Town, Johannesburg, 1968</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- 246 -
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Publisher</th>
<th>Year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fulton, Anthony</td>
<td>I Swear to Apollo</td>
<td>Purnell and Son, Cape Town</td>
<td>1970</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Gerber, Hilda</td>
<td>Cape Cookery, Old and New</td>
<td>Howard Timmins, Cape Town</td>
<td>1950</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glanville, E.</td>
<td>Tales from the Veld</td>
<td>Chatto and Windus, London</td>
<td>1897</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goldie, Fay</td>
<td>River of Gold</td>
<td>Oxford University Press</td>
<td>1969</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goold-Adams, R.J.M.</td>
<td>South Africa Today and Tomorrow</td>
<td>John Murray, London</td>
<td>1936</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gordon, Gerald</td>
<td>Four People</td>
<td>McDonald, London</td>
<td>1964</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Gordon-Brown, A.</td>
<td>South African Heritage from van Riebeeck to Nineteenth Century Times</td>
<td>Human and Rousseau, Cape Town and Pretoria</td>
<td>1965</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gordon-Brown edit.</td>
<td>see Adams, Buck; Ewart, James; Traveller, the</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Gordon-Brown, A.</td>
<td>Christopher Webb Smith, An Artist at the Cape of Good Hope 1837-1839</td>
<td>Howard Timmins, Cape Town</td>
<td>1965</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Gordon-Brown, A.</td>
<td>An Artist's Journey</td>
<td>A.A. Balkema, Cape Town</td>
<td>1972</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gray, The Right Rev.</td>
<td>A Journal of the Bishop's Visitation Tour</td>
<td>Through the Cape Colony</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Green, Lawrence G.</td>
<td>Where Men Still Dream</td>
<td>Howard Timmins, Cape Town</td>
<td>1945</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Green, Lawrence G.</td>
<td>So Few are Free</td>
<td>Howard Timmins, Cape Town</td>
<td>1946</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Green, Lawrence G.</td>
<td>Tavern of the Seas</td>
<td>Howard Timmins, Cape Town</td>
<td>1947</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Green, Lawrence G.</td>
<td>In the Land of Afternoon</td>
<td>Howard Timmins, Cape Town</td>
<td>1949</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Green, Lawrence G.</td>
<td>Grow Lovely, Growing Old</td>
<td>Howard Timmins, Cape Town</td>
<td>1951</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Green, Lawrence G.</td>
<td>Lords of the Last Frontier</td>
<td>Howard Timmins, Cape Town</td>
<td>1952</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Green, Lawrence G.</td>
<td>Under a Sky Like Flame</td>
<td>Howard Timmins, Cape Town</td>
<td>1954</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green, Lawrence G.</td>
<td>Karoo</td>
<td>Howard Timmins, Cape Town</td>
<td>1955</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Publisher and Location</td>
<td>Year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green, Lawrence G.</td>
<td>There's a Secret Hid Away</td>
<td>Howard Timmins, Cape Town</td>
<td>1956</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green, Lawrence G.</td>
<td>South African Beachcomber</td>
<td>Howard Timmins, Cape Town</td>
<td>1958</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green, Lawrence G.</td>
<td>These Wonders to Behold</td>
<td>Howard Timmins, Cape Town</td>
<td>1959</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green, Lawrence G.</td>
<td>Full Many a Glorious Morning</td>
<td>Howard Timmins, Cape Town</td>
<td>1968</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green, Lawrence G.</td>
<td>A Giant in Hiding</td>
<td>Howard Timmins, Cape Town</td>
<td>1970</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green, Lawrence G.</td>
<td>When the Journey's Over</td>
<td>Howard Timmins, Cape Town</td>
<td>1972</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greene, L. Patrick</td>
<td>The L. Patrick Greene Adventure Omnibus</td>
<td>John Hamilton Ltd., London</td>
<td>1928</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greig, George</td>
<td>The South African Almanac and Directory for the year 1831</td>
<td>Geo. Greig, Cape Town, 1831</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greig, George</td>
<td>The South African Almanac and Directory for the year 1833</td>
<td>Geo. Greig, Cape Town, 1833</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grenfell Williams, Joy</td>
<td>Moshesh, the Man on the Mountain</td>
<td>2nd ed. 1950, Paperback 1965</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Oxford University Press, London, 1965</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grindley, J.R.</td>
<td>Riches of the Sea</td>
<td>National Commercial Printers, Cape Town, 1969</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haagner, A. and Ivy, R.H.</td>
<td>Sketches of South African Bird Life</td>
<td>Maskew Miller, Cape Town, 1923</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haggard, H. Rider</td>
<td>Nada the Lily</td>
<td>Longman, Green &amp; Co., London, 1895</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hancock, James</td>
<td>MS. Notebook 1820-1837</td>
<td>Photocopy lent by 1820 Settler Museum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Handbook for Farmers in South Africa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>see Agriculture</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harris, W. Cornwallis</td>
<td>Wild Sports of Southern Africa</td>
<td>John Murray, London, 1839</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harvey, W.H.</td>
<td>The Genera of South African Plants</td>
<td>J.C. Juta, Cape Town, 1868</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(2nd edit. J.D. Hooker)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headlam, C. edit.</td>
<td>see Milner, Sir Alfred</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heller, David</td>
<td>In Search of V.O.C. Glass</td>
<td>Maskew Miller, Cape Town, 1951</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Hemans, A.N. Log of a Native Commissioner
Books of Rhodesia, Bulawayo, 1935

Henshilwood, Norah A Cape Childhood
David Philip, Cape Town, 1972

Herrman, L. A Note on Cape English Idiom
English Studies in Africa, Vol. 2, No. 2,
September, 1959

* Hewitt, A.G. Cape Cookery
Darter Bros. & Walton, Cape Town, 1890

* Hewitt, A.H. and Brink, André P.
see Brink, André P.

(*) Higham, Mary Household Cookery for South Africa
(1st edit. 1916)
8th edit. (reprint of 7th)
R.L. Esson, Johannesburg, 1939

(*) Hockly, H.E. The Story of the British Settlers of 1820
Juta & Co. Ltd., Cape Town and Johannesburg
1948

Hoernlé, R.F.S. South African Native Policy and the Liberal
Spirit.
Phelps-Stokes Fund of the University of Cape
Town, 1939

Hoyle, Joan Some Flowers of the Bush
Longmans Green & Co., London, 1953

* Huddleston, Trevor Nought for Your Comfort
Collins, London, 1956

Hudson, M.B. South African Frontier Life
2 Vols. John Patterson, Port Elizabeth, 1852

Hudson-Bennett, Lola See Bower, Lola

I.C.I. Veterinary Products Handbook
I.C.I. (South Africa) Pharmaceuticals, no date.

Jackson, Albert Trader on the Veld
A.A. Balkema, Cape Town, 1958

Jacobson, Dan A Long Way from London
1953, 1958 edit.
Weidenfeld and Nicolson, London, 1958

Jacobson, Dan A Dance in the Sun
Weidenfeld and Nicolson, London, 1956

(*) Keet, B.B. Whither - South Africa?
Trans. N. Marquard
University Publishers, Stellenbosch, 1956

* Keith, Sir George M. A Voyage to South America and the Cape of
Good Hope
J.B.G. Vogel, London, 1819

Keppel-Jones, Arthur A Short History of South Africa
Hutchinson's University Library, London, 1948
* King, N.L.  
Tree Planting in South Africa  
Reprinted from the Journal of the South African Forestry Association, No. 21, October, 1951

* Kipling, Rudyard  
The Five Nations  
Doubleday, Page & Co., New York, 1903

(*) Kipling, Rudyard  
The Definitive Edition of Rudyard Kipling's Verse  

Klein, Harry  
Stagecoach Dust  
Pioneer Days in South Africa  

Kolb, Peter  
trans. Medley  
The Present State of the Cape of Good Hope, or a particular account of the several nations of the Hottentots ... together with a short account of the Dutch Settlement at the Cape. Done in English by Mr. Medley.  
W. Innys, London, 1731

Krauss, Ferdinand  
edit. O.H. Spohr  
Travel Journal 1838-40  
A.A. Balkema, Cape Town, 1973

* Krige, Uys  
The Dream and the Desert  
Collins, London, 1953

Kuttel, Mary edit.  
See Duckitt, Hildagonda

Lady, A.  
Life at Natal a Hundred Years Ago 1864-1865  
C. Struik, Cape Town, 1972

* Lady, A.  
Life at the Cape (possibly by Louisa Grace Ross) 1870  
C. Struik, Cape Town, 1963

(*) Laidler, P.W.  
A Tavern of the Ocean  
Maskew Miller, Cape Town, 1926

* Lanham, Peter and Mopeli-Paulus, A.S.  
Blanket Boy's Moon  
Collins, London, 1953

Larson, Kenneth  
The Talbots, Sweetnams and Wiggils  
Unpublished typescript, Cory Library, 1943

Latrobe, C.J.  
Journal of a Visit to South Africa in 1815 and 1816.  
Seeley, London, 1818

(*) Leipoldt, C. Louis  
Three Hundred Years of Cape Wine  
Stewart, Cape Town, 1951

Le Vaillant, M.  
Travels into the Interior Part of Africa 1780-85, 2 Vols.  

(*) Lewcock, Ronald  
Early Nineteenth Century Architecture in South Africa, 1795-1837  
A.A. Balkema, Cape Town 1963

Leyland, J.  
Adventures in the Far Interior of South Africa  
George Routledge & Sons, Liverpool, 1866
[ V.R.S. No;10, 1928, No. 11, 1930] van Riebeeck Society, Cape Town, 1928, 1920

* Long, Una edit. See Goldswain, Jeremiah


Lückhoff, J. See du Plessis, I.D.


Mackenzie, K. *A Dragon to Kill* Eyre and Spottiswood, London, 1963


Mackrill, Joseph *MS. Diary 1806-1816* Cory Library

* Maclennan, D.A.C. Unpublished typescripts lent by the author of
  *A Winter Vacation*, 1961
  *(In) The Dawn Wind*, 1970. Also called
  *Great Wall of China*
  *The Wake*, 1971

McMagh, K. *A Dinner of Herbs* Purnell, Cape Town and Johannesburg, 1968

MacNab, R. *Poets in South Africa* Maskew Miller, Cape Town, 1958

* McKay, James (late Sergeant in Her Majesty's 74th Highlanders) Reminiscences of the Last Kaffir War 1st Edit., Grahamstown, 1871 C. Struik, Cape Town, 1970

* Malan, Robin *Ah Big Yaws?* David Philip, Cape Town, 1972

(*) Marquard, Leo *The Story of South Africa* Faber & Faber, London, Faber Paperback 1956

Marquard, N. trans. See Keet, B.B.

Masson, F. *Botanical Travels* Royal Society, London, 1776

Matshikiza, Todd *Chocolates for my Wife* Hodder and Stoughton, London, 1961

* Mayat, Zuleika edit. *Indian Delights* Published by the Women's Cultural Group, John Ramsay, Printer, Durban, 1961

Medley trans. See Kolb, Peter
(§) Meer. Fatima
Portrait of Indian South Africans
Avon House, Durban, 1969

Meiring, Jane
Candle in the Wind
Frederick Muller, London, 1959

Mentzel, O.F.
Description of the Cape of Good Hope
translation 1944.
Van Riebeeck Society, Cape Town, 1944
(V.R.S. No. 25)

(§) Metelerkamp, Sanni
George Rex of Knysna
(pub. 1955) Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1955

* Metrowich, F.C.
Frontier Flames
Book of Africa (Gothic Press), Cape Town, 1968

* Meurant, L.H.
Sixty Years Ago
1855, Facsimile reprint
Africana Connoisseur’s Press, Cape Town, 1963

Millin, Sarah Gertrude
Rhodes 1853-1902
Chatto & Windus, London, 1933

* Mills, Gwen M.
First Ladies of the Cape
Maskew Miller, Cape Town, 1952

(§) Milner, Sir Alfred later Viscount
The Milner Papers 1897-1899
edit. C. Headlam
Cassel, London, 1931

Mockford, Julian
Here are South Africans
A.C. Black, London, 1944

* ‘Money Maker’ Manuals for Investors No. 2
A new dictionary of mining terms.
London, No date.

Mopeli-Paulus, A.S.
See Lanham, Peter

Morton, H.V.
In Search of South Africa
Methuen & Co., London, 1948

[ Mphahlele, Ezekiel
Down Second Avenue
Faber and Faber, London, 1959 ]

New South African Writing, Vols. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5.

Obholzer, A. and Baraitser, M.
See Baraitser, M.

O’Connor, J.K.
The Afrikander Rebellion
Geo. Allen and Unwin, London,
Maskew Miller, Cape Town, 1915

Opperman, J.D. edit.
Spirit of the Vine
Published on the 50th Anniversary of the K.W.V.
Human and Rousseau, Cape Town and
Johannesburg, 1968

Palmer, Eve and Pitman, Norah
Trees of South Africa
A.A. Balkema, Cape Town, 1961

* Paton, Alan
Cry, the Beloved Country
Jonathan Cape, London, 1948
* Paton, Alan

Too Late the Phalarope
Cannon, Cape Town for Jonathan Cape,
London, 1963

Paton, Alan

Kontakion for you Departed
Jonathan Cape, London, 1969

* Percival, Captain Robert

An Account of the Cape of Good Hope
C. & R. Baldwin, London, 1804

(* Pettman, The Rev. Charles

Africanderisms, A Glossary of South African
Words and Phrases and of Place and other
Names.
Longmans Green and Co., London, 1913

* Philip, Marie

Caravan Caravel
Rex Collins, London, David Philip, Cape Town
1973

Philipps, Thomas

Scenes and Occurrences in Albany and Caffer-
Land
William Marsh, London, 1827

* Pigot, Eliza Sophia

Journal 1819-1821
Typed transcript lent by Margaret Rainier,
since published A. A. Balkema, Cape Town
1974

* Pohl, Victor

The Dawn and After
Faber and Faber, London, 1964

(*) Polson, Subaltern N.

A Subaltern's Sick Leave, Calcutta 1837
Quoted in S. A. Library Quarterly Bulletin,

Prance, C.R.

Tante Rebella's Saga
Witherby, London, 1937

Pringle, Thomas

Ephemerides
Smith, Elder & Co., London, 1828

(*) Pringle, Thomas

African Sketches
Edw. Moxon, London, 1834

Pringle, Thomas

MS. material made available by Professor
A.R.W. de Villiers, Rhodes University

Rabone, A. edit.

Record of a Pioneer Family, 1851-1890
C. Struik, Cape Town, 1966

* Raymond, Harry

B.J. Barnato, A Memoir
Isbister and Co., London, 1897

Reed, Douglas

Somewhere South of Suez,
Jonathan Cape, London, 1950

Reitz, Deneys

Commando: A Boer Journal of the Boer War
Faber and Faber, London, 1929

Reports of the Commissioners of Inquiry:
Inquiry on the Cape of Good Hope ordered by the
House of Commons to be published.
George Greig, Cape Town, 1827

* Rivett-Carnac, Dorothy

Hawk's Eye, A biography of Sir Henry Somerset
Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1966
The Birds of South Africa
Witherby, London
Central News Agency, Johannesburg, 1948

The Churchills in Africa

On Trek in the Transvaal, or Over Berg and Veld in South Africa
Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Remington, London, 1878

The Black Sash
Rotonews (Pty) Ltd., Johannesburg, 1956

A Lover for Estelle
Victor Gollancz, London, 1961

Four Years in Southern Africa
Henry Colburn and Richard Bentley, London, 1829

General De Wet
Dassie Publications, 1946

See Lady, A. Life at the Cape

Van Hunks and His Pipe
Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1966

Story of an African Farm, 1833
Chapman & Hall, London, 1890
Hutchinson edit. no date.

Thoughts on South Africa
T. Fisher Unwin Ltd., London, 1923

Diamond Fields, a fragment
edit. Richard Rive in English in Africa
Vol. I, No. 1, March, 1974

Pygmalion, 1914 published 1916

Diaries, 1820-1822, 1826-1829
Typed transcript lent by Professor David Hammond Tooke, since published A.A. Balkema, Cape Town, 1972

The Story of My Mission in South-Eastern Africa

Diaries 1838-1867
Typed transcript and MS.
Cory Library

The South African Judicial Dictionary
Butterworth & Co. (Africa) Ltd., Durban, 1960

Centenary Book of South African Verse (1925 re-issued 1946)
Longmans, London, 1946
Smith, Andrew
The Diary of Dr. Andrew Smith, 1835
edit. Percival R. Kirby
Vol. I V.R.S. 20, 1939
Vol. II V.R.S. 21, 1940
Van Riebeeck Society, Cape Town, 1939, 1940

(*) Smith, C. A.
Common Names of South African Plants
edit. Phillips, E. Percy and van Hoepen, Estelle
Department of Agricultural and Technical Services, Government Printer, Pretoria, 1966

(*) Smith, J. L. B.
The Sea Fishes of Southern Africa
1950 and 1961 edit.
Central News Agency Ltd., South Africa

* Smith, Pauline
The Little Karoo, 1925

* Smith, Pauline
The Beadle, 1926

Smith, Pauline
Platkop Children
Jonathan Cape, London, 1935

(a) South African Library Quarterly Bulletin
Vol. 10, No. 3, March, 1956

of Race Relations
S.A.I.R.R. Survey, see also Race Relations
1969 S.A.I.R.R.

Sparrman, Anders
A Voyage to the Cape of Good Hope
2 Vols. 1785 (translation G. Forster)
2nd edit. G.G.J. and J. Robinson, London 1786

Spottiswoode, Hilda, edit.
South Africa - The Road Ahead
Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1960

Stander, Siegfried
The Horse

Statute Law of the Cape of Good Hope
Saul Solomon, Cape Town, 1862

* Stormberg, R. Y.
Mrs. Pieter de Bruyn
Maskew Miller, Cape Town, 1920

Stratham, F. Reginald
Blacks, Boers and British
McMillan & Co., London, 1881

* Stubbs, Thomas
Reminiscences 1820 - 1877
M.A. thesis Rhodes University, edited by
Robert T. McGeoch, 1965

Swart, C. P.
Africananderisms: A Supplement to the Rev. Charles
Pettman's Glossary of South African Colloquial
Words and Phrases and Other Names.
M.A. thesis University of South Africa, Pretoria, 1934

Tait, Barbara
Campbell
The Durban Story
Knox Printing Co., Durban, 1961

Telford, A. A.
Yesterday's Dress: A History of Costume in
South Africa
Purnell, Cape Town, Johannesburg, London, 1972
Thompson, George
Travels and Adventures in Southern Africa by George Thompson, Esq.
Eight years a resident at the Cape, comprising a view of the present state of the Cape Colony with observations on the progress and prospects of the British Emigrants.
2 Vols. Henry Colburn, London, 1827

Thompson, Kate
Richard's Way
George Harrap and Co., London, 1965

Thunberg, Charles Peter, M.D.
Travels in Europe, Africa and Asia Made Between the Years 1770 and 1779
(translation published 1795)

Tomlinson Commission
Summary of the Report of the Commission for the Socio-Economic Development of the Bantu Areas within the Union of South Africa
Government Printer, Pretoria, 1955

* Traveller, The
edit. A. Gordon-Brown
Journal in An Artist's Journey
Thought to be made by Lieut. Frederick Kayvett between 1832-33 at which time he was at the Cape from India.
A. A. Balkema, Cape Town, 1972

van Alphen, J.G.
Jan Venter, S.A.P.
Maskew Miller, Cape Town, 1929

* Vaughan, Iris
The Diary of Iris Vaughan, circa 1902
Central News Agency, South Africa, 1958
Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1969

* Vaughan, Iris
Last of the Sunlit Years
Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1969

Walker, Eric
Lord de Villiers and his Times
Constable, London, 1925

(*) Walker, Eric
A History of South Africa
Longmans Green and Co., London, 1928

(*) Walker, Eric, edit.
Cambridge History of the British Empire
Vol. VIII South Africa
Cambridge University Press, 1936

Walker, Oliver
Kaffirs are Lively
Victor Gollancz Ltd., London, 1948

Walker, Oliver
Wanton City
Werner Laurie, London, 1949

Wallace, R.
Farming Industries of the Cape Colony
P.S. King & Son, London, 1896

Ward, Rowland
The Sportsman's Handbook
Published by the Author

* Webster, W.H.B.
Narrative of a Voyage to the Southern Atlantic Ocean in the Years 1828, 29, 30 Performed in H.M. Sloop Chanticleer
From the private journal of W.H.B. Webster - surgeon of the sloop, In two volumes
Richard Bentley, Publisher in Ordinary to His Majesty, London, 1834
(Vol. I, pp. 215-335.)
V. OTHER SOURCES

(1) Oral informants
(2) Private letters
(3) Radio programmes and bulletins
(4) Songs by Pip Freedman, Des Lindberg and A.E. Voss
(5) Philip's School Atlas
(6) B.P. and Shell Road Maps of South Africa and Place Name Lists
(7) Advertising or Information leaflets
(8) National Geographic Magazine, December, 1971
(9) Matriculation Handbook, 1973
(10) Lennon's Dutch Medicines Handbook
(11) Telephone Directories and Postal Code
(12) Press Digest, 1948
(14) Hansard

(16) Piscator Autumn 1974, see Jackson, P.B.N.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Title/Note</th>
<th>Publisher/Year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HONG KONG</td>
<td>Han, Suyin</td>
<td>Destination Chungking</td>
<td>Paperback ed., 1973</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Han, Suyin</td>
<td>A Many Splendoured Thing</td>
<td>Jonathan Cape, London, 1952</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sphere Books paperback ed., 1967</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gordon Davies, John</td>
<td>Text for Hong Kong through the Looking Glass</td>
<td>Kelly and Walsh, Hong Kong, 1969, 3rd ed. 1972</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>South China Morning Post, Victoria, H.K.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUSTRALIA</td>
<td>O'Grady, John</td>
<td>Aussie English (see Section II)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lawson, Henry</td>
<td>While the Billy Boils</td>
<td>Angus and Robertson, Sydney, 1896</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pacific Books, 1969</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dennis, C.J.</td>
<td>Digger Smith</td>
<td>First published 1918</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Angus and Robertson, Sydney, 1920</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Dennis, C.J.</td>
<td>Selected Verse</td>
<td>First published 1950</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Dennis, C.J.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Angus and Robertson, Sydney, 1971</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CANADA</td>
<td>Montgomery, L.M.</td>
<td>Anne of Green Gables etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANGLO-INDIA</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Forster, E.M.</td>
<td>The Indian Cookery Book by a Thirty Five Year's Resident</td>
<td>Thacker and Spink, Calcutta (reprint) 1911</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>A Passage to India (1924)</td>
<td>Edward Arnold, London. Pocket ed., 1947</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Bhowani Junction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Rao, G. Subba</td>
<td></td>
<td>See Addenda Section II</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>